

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



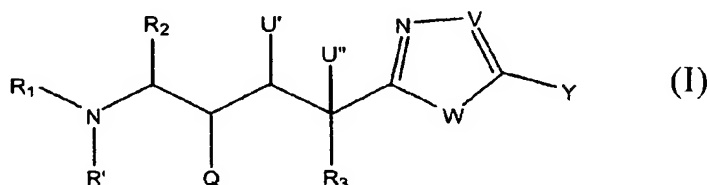
(43) International Publication Date  
12 June 2003 (12.06.2003)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 03/047576 A1**

- (51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: **A61K 31/427**, 31/4196, 31/4174, 31/4178, A61P 25/28
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/US02/40038
- (22) International Filing Date: 3 December 2002 (03.12.2002)
- (25) Filing Language: English
- (26) Publication Language: English
- (30) Priority Data:  
60/336,566 4 December 2001 (04.12.2001) US
- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): **ELAN PHARMACEUTICALS, INC.** [US/US]; 800 Gateway Boulevard, South San Francisco, CA 94080 (US).
- (72) Inventor; and
- (73) Inventor/Applicant (for US only): **VARGHESE, John** [US/US]; 1722 18th Avenue, San Francisco, CA 94122 (US).
- (74) Agent: **SINGER, Christopher, P.**; McDonnell Boehnen Hulbert & Berghoff, Suite 3200, 300 South Wacker Drive, Chicago, IL 60606 (US).
- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, OM, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SI, SG, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).
- Published:**  
— with international search report  
— before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments
- For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: PEPTIDE ISOSTERES CONTAINING A HETEROCYCLE USEFUL IN THE TREATMENT OF ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE



(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to methods of treating Alzheimer's disease, and other diseases, and/or inhibiting beta-secretase enzyme, and/or inhibiting deposition of A beta peptide in a mammal, by use of known compounds of formula (I) wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, U', U'', V, Y, W, Q, R' are as defined herein.

WO 03/047576 A1

PEPTIDE ISOSTERES CONTAINING A HETEROCYCLE USEFUL IN THE  
TREATMENT OF ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE

5 This application claims priority to U.S. Provisional  
Patent Application No.: 60/336,566, filed on December 4,  
2001.

10 Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to the treatment of  
Alzheimer's disease and other similar diseases, and more  
specifically to the use of compounds that inhibit beta-  
secretase, an enzyme that cleaves amyloid precursor protein  
15 to produce A beta peptide, a major component of the amyloid  
plaques found in the brains of Alzheimer's sufferers, in  
such methods.

Background of the Invention

20 Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a progressive degenerative  
disease of the brain primarily associated with aging.  
Clinical presentation of AD is characterized by loss of  
memory, cognition, reasoning, judgment, and orientation.  
As the disease progresses, motor, sensory, and linguistic  
25 abilities are also affected until there is global  
impairment of multiple cognitive functions. These  
cognitive losses occur gradually, but typically lead to  
severe impairment and eventual death in the range of four  
to twelve years.

30 Alzheimer's disease is characterized by two major  
pathologic observations in the brain: neurofibrillary  
tangles and beta amyloid (or neuritic) plaques, comprised  
predominantly of an aggregate of a peptide fragment known as  
A beta. Individuals with AD exhibit characteristic beta-

amyloid deposits in the brain (beta amyloid plaques) and in cerebral blood vessels (beta amyloid angiopathy) as well as neurofibrillary tangles. Neurofibrillary tangles occur not only in Alzheimer's disease but also in other dementia-inducing disorders. On autopsy, large numbers of these lesions are generally found in areas of the human brain important for memory and cognition.

Smaller numbers of these lesions in a more restricted anatomical distribution are found in the brains of most aged humans who do not have clinical AD. Amyloidogenic plaques and vascular amyloid angiopathy also characterize the brains of individuals with Trisomy 21 (Down's Syndrome), Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type (HCHWA-D), and other neurodegenerative disorders. Beta-amyloid is a defining feature of AD, now believed to be a causative precursor or factor in the development of disease. Deposition of A beta in areas of the brain responsible for cognitive activities is a major factor in the development of AD. Beta-amyloid plaques are predominantly composed of amyloid beta peptide (A beta, also sometimes designated betaA4). A beta peptide is derived by proteolysis of the amyloid precursor protein (APP) and is comprised of 39-42 amino acids. Several proteases called secretases are involved in the processing of APP.

Cleavage of APP at the N-terminus of the A beta peptide by beta-secretase and at the C-terminus by one or more gamma-secretases constitutes the beta-amyloidogenic pathway, i.e. the pathway by which A beta is formed.

Cleavage of APP by alpha-secretase produces alpha-sAPP, a secreted form of APP that does not result in beta-amyloid plaque formation. This alternate pathway precludes the formation of A beta peptide. A description of the proteolytic processing fragments of APP is found, for

example, in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,441,870; 5,721,130; and 5,942,400.

5 An aspartyl protease has been identified as the enzyme responsible for processing of APP at the beta-secretase cleavage site. The beta-secretase enzyme has been disclosed using varied nomenclature, including BACE, Asp, and Memapsin. See, for example, Sindha et al., 1999, *Nature* 402:537-554 (p501) and published PCT application WO00/17369.

10 Several lines of evidence indicate that progressive cerebral deposition of beta-amyloid peptide (A beta) plays a seminal role in the pathogenesis of AD and can precede cognitive symptoms by years or decades. See, for example, Selkoe, 1991, *Neuron* 6:487. Release of A beta from  
15 neuronal cells grown in culture and the presence of A beta in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of both normal individuals and AD subjects has been demonstrated. See, for example, Seubert et al., 1992, *Nature* 359:325-327.

20 It has been proposed that A beta peptide accumulates as a result of APP processing by beta-secretase, thus inhibition of this enzyme's activity is desirable for the treatment of AD. *In vivo* processing of APP at the beta-secretase cleavage site is thought to be a rate-limiting step in A beta production, and is thus a therapeutic target  
25 for the treatment of AD. See for example, Sabbagh, M., et al., 1997, *Alz. Dis. Rev.* 3, 1-19.

BACE1 knockout mice fail to produce A beta, and present a normal phenotype. When crossed with transgenic mice that over express APP, the progeny show reduced  
30 amounts of A beta in brain extracts as compared with control animals (Luo et al., 2001 *Nature Neuroscience* 4:231-232). This evidence further supports the proposal that inhibition of beta-secretase activity and reduction of



A beta in the brain provides a therapeutic method for the treatment of AD and other beta amyloid disorders.

At present there are no effective treatments for halting, preventing, or reversing the progression of Alzheimer's disease. Therefore, there is an urgent need for pharmaceutical agents capable of slowing the progression of Alzheimer's disease and/or preventing it in the first place.

Compounds that are effective inhibitors of beta-secretase, that inhibit beta-secretase-mediated cleavage of APP, that are effective inhibitors of A beta production, and/or are effective to reduce amyloid beta deposits or plaques, are needed for the treatment and prevention of disease characterized by amyloid beta deposits or plaques, such as AD.

At present there are no effective treatments for halting, preventing, or reversing the progression of Alzheimer's disease. Therefore, there is an urgent need for pharmaceutical agents capable of slowing the progression of Alzheimer's disease and/or preventing it in the first place.

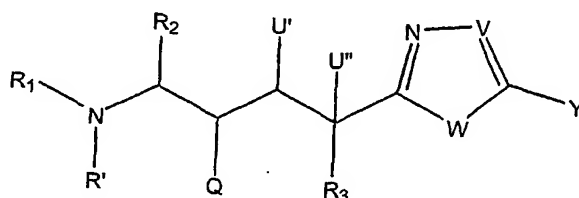
Compounds that are effective inhibitors of beta-secretase, that inhibit beta-secretase-mediated cleavage of APP, that are effective inhibitors of A beta production, and/or are effective to reduce amyloid beta deposits or plaques, are needed for the treatment and prevention of disease characterized by amyloid beta deposits or plaques, such as AD.

30

SUMMARY OF INVENTION

The present invention relates to methods of treating a subject who has, or in preventing a subject from developing, a disease or condition selected from the group consisting of Alzheimer's disease, for helping prevent or delay the onset of Alzheimer's disease, for helping to slow the progression of Alzheimer's disease, for treating subjects with mild cognitive impairment (MCI) and preventing or delaying the onset of Alzheimer's disease in those who would progress from MCI to AD, for treating Down's syndrome, for treating humans who have Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type, for treating cerebral amyloid angiopathy and preventing its potential consequences, i.e. single and recurrent lobar hemorrhages, for treating other degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative origin, dementia associated with Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia associated with progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, or diffuse Lewy body type of Alzheimer's disease and who is in need of such treatment which comprises administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound described in published International Patent Application No. WO 93/05026, i.e., a compound of formula (I):

Formula (I)



wherein R<sub>1</sub> is A-(B)<sub>t</sub>;

A is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6C(=E)$ ,  $R_6OC(=E)$ ,  $R_6NR;C(=E)$ ,  $R_6SC(=E)$ ,  $R_{17}NR'C(=NR')$ ,  $R_6OCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6NHCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SO_2$ , or  $R_6SO$ ;

B is an amino acid,  $SCH(R_7)CO$  or  $OCH(R_7)CO$ ;

5 E is O or S;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl or T- $C_{2-6}$ alkynyl, optionally substituted by  $R_{10}$ ;

T is Ar, Het, or  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl;

10  $R_5$ ,  $R_6$ , and  $R_7$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{3-11}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $(CH_2)_nCH(T)(CH_2)_n$ , optionally substituted by one or two halogen,  $SR'$ ,  $OR'$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ , or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

Q is OH or  $NH_2$ ;

15 U' and U'' are H or OH;

V is N or C-Y';

W is  $NR_{11}$  or S;

Y and Y' are H, halogen,  $CF_3$ , Ar,  $NO_2$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, CO-Z or  $(CR_8R_9)_n-R'$ , or together Y and Y' form a five or six-  
20 membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

Z is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, OH,  $NR'R_5$ ,  $OR_5$  or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

$R_8$  is independently H, OH,  $N'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  
25  $NR'-NR'_2$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ ;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl, CO-Z,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ , or, taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are  $=O$ ,  $=N-OR'$  or  $=N-NR'_2$ ;

R' is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

30  $R_{10}$  is  $-X'-(CH_2)_qNR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $X''[((CH_2)_rO)_s]R_{14}$ ,  $CH_2X''[((CH_2)_rO)_s]R_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with Y forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

5  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or  $N(R')_2$ , ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from NR'', O, S, SO,  $SO_2$ , said heterocycle optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted  
10 with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or  $N(R'')_2$ ;

$R''$  is H or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{14}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C(=O)R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)U'''[(CH_2)_mO]_nR'$ ,  $P(=O)(OM)_2$ ,  $CO_2R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)NR_{15}R_{16}$ , where M is a mono or  
15 divalent metal ion, and  $U'''$  is  $NR'$  or O;

$R_{15}$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy,  $CONR'_2$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $CO_2R'$ ,  $SO_2NR'_2$ ,  $CH_2NR_2$ ,  $NR'COR'$ ,  $NR'SO_2R'$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$  or  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$ ;

20  $R_{16}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or together with  $R_{15}$  forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

$X'$  is  $CH_2$ , O, S, or NH;

25  $X''$  is  $CH_2$ , NR, O, S, SO, or  $SO_2$ ;

m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

30 T is 0 or 1; or

a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Published International Patent Application No. WO 93/05026 discloses compounds of the general formula (I) and their use as HIV inhibitors. The reader is directed to

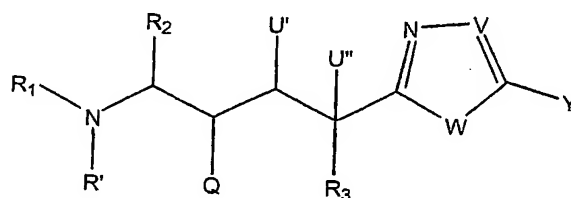
published International Patent Application No. WO 93/05026 for methods of preparing the compounds of the invention. The disclosure of each of these two documents is incorporated herein by reference, in its entirety.

5       The present invention provides methods comprising compounds, compositions, and kits for inhibiting beta-secretase-mediated cleavage of amyloid precursor protein (APP). More particularly, the methods comprising compounds, compositions, and kits are effective to inhibit  
10 the production of A beta peptide and to treat or prevent any human or veterinary disease or condition associated with a pathological form of A beta peptide.

Detailed Description of the Invention

Published International Patent Application No. WO 93/05026 disclose various compounds of the formula I:

Formula (I)



5

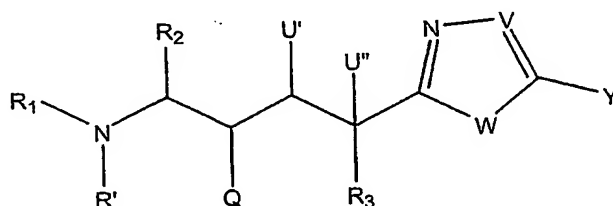
wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R', U', U'', V, W, Y, and Q are as defined above, and which are useful for the inhibition of the HIV protease enzyme. This patent does not have any disclosure with regard to Alzheimer's disease.

Published International Patent Application No. WO 93/05026 discloses how to make the above compounds and how to use them for the inhibition of the HIV protease enzyme. The essential material of published International Patent Application No. WO 93/05026, with regard to how to make these compounds is incorporated herein by reference.

In one aspect, the present invention relates to methods of treating a subject who has, or in preventing a subject from developing, a disease or condition selected from the group consisting of Alzheimer's disease, for helping prevent or delay the onset of Alzheimer's disease, for helping to slow the progression of Alzheimer's disease, for treating subjects with mild cognitive impairment (MCI) and preventing or delaying the onset of Alzheimer's disease in those who would progress from MCI to AD, for treating Down's syndrome, for treating humans who have Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type, for treating cerebral amyloid angiopathy and preventing its potential consequences, i.e. single and recurrent lobar hemorrhages, for treating other degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative

origin, dementia associated with Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia associated with progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, or diffuse  
 5 Lewy body type of Alzheimer's disease and who is in need of such treatment which comprises administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof:

**Formula (I)**



wherein R<sub>1</sub> is A-(B)<sub>t</sub>;

A is R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>OC(=E), R<sub>6</sub>NR<sub>17</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>SC(=E), R<sub>17</sub>NR'C(=NR'), R<sub>6</sub>OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>NHCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>, or R<sub>6</sub>SO;

B is an amino acid, SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO or OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO;

E is O or S;

R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>3</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl or T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, optionally substituted by R<sub>10</sub>;

T is Ar, Het, or C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl;

R<sub>5</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>, and R<sub>7</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>3-11</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CH(T)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, optionally substituted by one or two halogen, SR', OR', NR'<sub>2</sub>, C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

Q is OH or NH<sub>2</sub>;

U' and U'' are H or OH;

V is N or C-Y';

W is NR<sub>11</sub> or S;

Y and Y' are H, halogen, CF<sub>3</sub>, Ar, NO<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, CO-Z

or (CR<sub>8</sub>R<sub>9</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R', or together Y and Y' form a five or six-

membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$Z$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, OH,  $NR'R_5$ ,  $OR_5$  or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

5  $R_8$  is independently H, OH,  $N'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'-NR'_2$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ ;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $CO-Z$ ,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ , or, taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are  $=O$ ,  $=N-OR'$  or  $=N-NR'_2$ ;

10  $R'$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $Ar-C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{10}$  is  $-X'-(CH_2)_qNR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ ,  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

15  $R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $Ar-C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with  $Y$  forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by  
20 OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or  $N(R')_2$ , ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from  $NR''$ , O, S, SO,  $SO_2$ , said heterocycle optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted  
25 with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or  $N(R'')_2$ ;

$R''$  is H or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{14}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C(=O)R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)U'''[(CH_2)_mO]_nR'$ ,  $P(=O)(OM)_2$ ,  $CO_2R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)NR_{15}R_{16}$ , where  $M$  is a mono or divalent metal ion, and  $U'''$  is  $NR'$  or O;

30  $R_{15}$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy,  $CONR'_2$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $CO_2R'$ ,  $SO_2NR'_2$ ,  $CH_2NR_2$ ,  $NR'COR'$ ,  $NR'SO_2R'$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$  or  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$ ;



$R_{16}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or together with  $R_{15}$  forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

5  $X'$  is  $CH_2$ , O, S, or NH;

$X''$  is  $CH_2$ , NR, O, S, SO, or  $SO_2$ ;

m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

10 s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and  
T is 0 or 1.

In one aspect W is S. In another aspect W is N and V is C-Y.

In one aspect  $R_1$  is  $R_6CO$ ,  $R_6OCO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ , or Ala, Val,  
15 or Thr substituted on the amino group by  $R_6CO$ ,  $R_6OCO$ , or  $R_6SO_2$ .

In one aspect Y is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $CO-(CHR_8)_{(n-1)}-R'$ ,  $CO-Z$ ,  $(CHR_9)_n-OH$ ,  $C(=NOH)-C_{1-6}$ alkyl or  $CHOH(CHR_8)_{(n-1)}-R'$ .

In one aspect A is butyloxycarbonyl, carbobenzyloxy,  
20 or pyridinylmethyloxycarbonyl.

In one aspect  $R_2$  is  $CH_2-T$ .

In one aspect  $R_3$  is  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or  $CH_2-T$ .

In one aspect Z is H,  $NH_2$ , or Ph.

In one aspect  $R_9$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or Ph.

25 In one aspect  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  are benzyl.

In one aspect U and U' are H and Q is OH.

In one aspect the instant invention relates to methods comprising administration of representative compounds of the invention:

30 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-butyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-ethyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

5 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-1,3,5-triazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-acetylimidazole;

10 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-hydroxyethyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-propionylimidazole;

15 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)imidazole;

20 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-oxobutyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methyl-1-oxobutyl)imidazole;

25 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-carbomethoxyimidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(N-methylaminocarbonyl)-imidazole;

30 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L-valyllamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2- { (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' - isopropoxycarbonyl) -L-valyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl } -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

5 2- [ (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' - (1-oxo-3-phenylpropyl)) -L-valyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

2- { (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (3-methyl-1-oxobutyl) ] amino-5-phenylpentyl } -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

10 2- { (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' -acetyl) -L-valyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl } -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

15 2- { (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' -acetyl) -D-valyllamino-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

2- ( (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' -benzyloxycarbonyl) -L-threonyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl ) -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

20 2- { (1R,3S,3'S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- {1' - [5'-hydroxy-3' - (1-methylethyl) -2'-oxo-1'pyrrolidinyl] } -5-phenylpentyl } -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

2- { (1R,3S,3'R,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- {1' - [5'-hydroxy-3' - (1-methylethyl) -2'-oxo-1'pyrrolidinyl] } -5-phenylpentyl } -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

25 2- [ (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4-benzenesulfonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl ] -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

2-1 (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' -methanesulfonyl) -L-valyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl ) -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

30 2- { (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4- [N- (N' -tert-butoxycarbonyl) -L-valyl] amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl } -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butenoyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethylbutanoyl)-imidazole;

3-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-6,6-dimethyl-5-hydroxy-pyrrolo-[1,2-c]-imidazol-7-one;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(cyclopentylcarbonyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-benzoylimidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-ethylbutanoyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(E)-1-(hydroxyimino)-2-methylpropyl]imidazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-benzoyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-( $\alpha$ -hydroxybenzyl)-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-aminocarbonyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-hydroxymethyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-formyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1-hydroxypropyl)-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(3-hydroxypropyl)-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1,2-dihydroxyethyl)-thiazole;

5 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-alanyl)amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-valyl)amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

10 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propionyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-carboxy-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(2-methyl-1-hydroxy-propyl)-thiazole;

15 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(N'-benzyloxycarbonyl-guanidino)carbonyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1-methoxycarbonyl)propyl-thiazole;

20 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1-methoxy)propyl-thiazole; and

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1-aminocarbonyl)propyl-thiazole;

25 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(cyclopentylcarbonyl)-imidazole;

30 2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(E)-1-(hydroxyiminoy-2-methylpropyl)imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2,2-dimethylbutanoyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butenoyl)imidazole;

5 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-acetyl)-D-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

10 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-oxobutyl)imidazole;

15 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-propionylimidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-acetylimidazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

20 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-valyl)amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

2-{[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-methanesulfonyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-imidazole;

25 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-ethylbutanoyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methyl-1-oxobutyl)imidazole;

30 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-isopropoxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-(1-oxo-3-phenylpropyl))-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-acetyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole; and

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-benzyloxycarbonyl)-L-threonyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole.

### Definitions

The compounds of this invention may be identified in two ways: by descriptive names and by reference to structures having various chemical moieties. The following terms may also be used and are defined below.

The term "modulating" refers to the ability of a compound to at least partially block the active site of the beta amyloid converting enzyme, thereby decreasing, or inhibiting the turnover rate of the enzyme.

The definition of any substituent moiety which may occur more than once in formula (I) is independent of any other occurrence. Formula (I) is intended to encompass all unique nonracemic stereoisomers which may occur due to the presence of asymmetric carbon atoms in the molecules.

C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl as used herein is meant to include methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, isobutyl, and t-butyl. C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl additionally includes pentyl, n-pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, and hexyl, and the simple aliphatic isomers thereof.

C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl as applied herein means an alkyl group of 2 to 6 carbons wherein a carbon-carbon single bond is

replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond. C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl includes ethylene, 1-propene, 2-propene, 1-butene, 2-butene, isobutene, and the several isomeric pentenes and hexenes. Both cis and trans isomers are included.

5 C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl means an alkyl group of 2 to 6 carbons wherein one carbon-carbon single bond is replaced by a carbon-carbon triple bond. C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl included acetylene, 1-propyne, 2-propyne, 1-butyne, 2-butyne, 3-butyne, and the simple isomers of pentyne and hexyne.

10 A substituent on a C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl or C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, such as R<sub>8</sub>, R<sub>9</sub>, or R<sub>10</sub>, can be on any carbon atom which results in a stable structure, and is available by conventional synthetic techniques.

Halogen is selected from the group fluorine, chlorine, 15 bromine, and iodine.

M indicates a mono- or divalent alkaline or earth metal ion, such as potassium, sodium, lithium, calcium, or magnesium.

20 T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl refers to a C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl group wherein in any position a carbon-hydrogen bond is replaced by a carbon-T bond. T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl and T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl have a similar meaning with respect to C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl and C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl.

C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl refers to an optionally substituted carbocyclic system of three to seven carbon atoms, which 25 may contain up to two unsaturated carbon-carbon bonds. Typical of C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl are cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl, and cycloheptyl. Any combination of up to three substituents on the cycloalkyl ring that is available by conventional 30 chemical synthesis, and is stable, is within the scope of this invention.

C<sub>3-11</sub>cycloalkyl indicates a stable mono- or bicyclic ring of 3 to 11 carbon atoms, which can be saturated or unsaturated, and can be substituted with one to three C<sub>1</sub>-



alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkthio, trifluoroalkyl, guanidino, amidino, OH, NR'<sub>2</sub>, Cl, Br, or I groups. C<sub>3-11</sub>cycloalkyl includes cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, tetralinyl, indanyl, phenyl, and anphthyl. Azacycloalkyl indicates a C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl group wherein a carbon atom is replaced by a nitrogen atom, such as aziridine, azetidine, pyrrolidine, piperidine, or tetrahydroazepine. Azabicyclo-C<sub>7-11</sub>cycloalkyl indicates a C<sub>7-11</sub>cycloalkyl group wherein one of the carbon atoms is replaced by a nitrogen atom.

Ar, or aryl, as used herein, means phenyl or naphthyl, or phenyl or naphthyl substituted by one to three C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkthio, trifluoroalkyl, guanidino, amidino, HetC<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, HetC<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, OH, Cl, Br, or I.

Het, or heteroaryl, indicates a five or six membered aromatic ring, or a nine or ten membered aromatic ring, containing one to three heteroatoms chosen from the group of nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, which are stable and available by conventional chemical synthesis. Illustrative heterocycles are morpholine, tetrazole, imidazole, benzimidazole, pyrrole, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, pyrazolidinyl, pyrazolinyl, indole, pyridine, pyrimidine, pyrimidone, quinoline, benzofuran, furan, benzothiophene, or thiophene. The Het ring can optionally be substituted on the carbon or heteroatom by one to three C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkenyl, hydroxyC<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl group, carboxyl, aminocarbonyl, alkoxycarbonyl, carboxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aminocarbonylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, alkoxycarbonylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, or a phenylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl group substituted by one to three C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkthio, trifluoroalkyl, OH, Cl, Br, or I groups.

Any accessible combination of up to three substituents on the phenyl, naphthyl, or Het ring which is available by chemical synthesis and is stable is within the scope of this invention. Ar-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl and Ar-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl mean C<sub>1-</sub>

<sub>6</sub>alkyl or C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl wherein a carbon-hydrogen bond is replaced by a carbon-Ar bond. Het-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl and Het-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl mean C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl wherein a carbon-hydrogen bond is replaced by a carbon-Het bond.

5 Boc refers to the t-butyloxycarbonyl radical, Cbz refers to the benzyloxycarbonyl radical, Bzl refers to the benzyl radical, Ac refers to acetyl, Ph refers to phenyl, tbs refers to t-butyldimethyldilyl, EDTA is ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid, BOP refers to benzotriazol-1-yloxy-  
10 tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate, DIEA is diisopropylethylamine, DBU is 1,8 diazobicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene, DMSO is dimethylsulfoxide, DMF is dimethyl formamide, MeOH is methanol, pyr is pyridine, DMAP is 4-dimethylaminopyridine, Lawesson's reagent is 2,4-bis(4-  
15 methoxyphenyl)-1,3-dithia-2,4-diphosphetane-2,4-disulfide, and THF is tetrahydrofuran.

Amino acid is taken to mean the D- or L- isomer of alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamine, glutamic acid, glycine, histidine, isoleucine,  
20 leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, or valine. Typically lipophilic amino acids are preferred. In general the amino acid abbreviations used herein follow the IUPAC-IUB Joint Commission on Biochemical Nomenclature as  
25 described in Eur. J. Biochem., 158(9); 1984.

When Y or R<sub>9</sub> are CO-Z and Z is an amino acid, the amino acid is joined by an amide bond via its amino terminus to the carbonyl group, and the carboxy terminus of the amino acid is blocked or unblocked. An unblocked carboxy  
30 terminus is a free carboxyl group. Typical blocking groups are esters and amides, such as NR'R<sub>5</sub> or OR<sub>5</sub>, wherein R<sub>5</sub> is as defined in formula (I).

When t is 1 and B is an amino acid, the amino acid is joined via its carboxy terminus to the amino group of the

isostere, and the amino terminus is substituted by A. When  $R_8$  is  $NR'R_{18}$  and  $R_{18}$  is an amino acid, the amino acid is joined to the nitrogen atom via its carbonyl group, and the amino terminus of the amino acid can be blocked or unblocked. Valine, threonine, and alanine are useful amino acids. Cbz-Val, and 2-quinolinylcarbonyl-Val are illustrative blocked amino acids. An unblocked amino terminus is an unsubstituted amino group. Typical blocking groups for the amino terminus are  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$ ,  $R_6OCO$ ,  $R_6OCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6NHCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SO_2$ , or  $R_6SO$ , wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_7$  are as defined in formula (I). Acetyl, Boc, Cbz, pyridinylmethyloxycarbonyl and 3-quinolinylmethyloxycarbonyl are illustrative of the A substituent and blocking groups for the amino terminus.

The pharmaceutically-acceptable salts of the compounds of Formula (I) (in the form of water- or oil-soluble or dispersible products) include the conventional non-toxic salts or the quaternary ammonium salts which are formed, e.g., from inorganic or organic acids or bases. Examples of such acid addition salts include acetate, adipate, alginate, aspartate, benzoate, benzenesulfonate, bisulfate, butyrate, citrate, camphorate, camphorsulfonate, cyclopentanepropionate, digluconate, dodecylsulfate, ethanesulfonate, fumarate, glucoheptanoate, glycerophosphate, hemisulfate, heptanoate, hexanoate, hydrochloride, hydrobromide, hydroiodide, 2-hydroxyethanesulfonate, lactate, maleate, methanesulfonate, 2-naphthalenesulfonate, nicotinate, oxalate, pamoate, pectinate, persulfate, 3-phenylpropionate, picrate, pivalate, propionate, succinate, tartrate, thiocyanate, tosylate, and undecanoate. Base salts include ammonium salts, alkali metal salts such as sodium and potassium salts, alkaline earth metal salts such as calcium and magnesium salts, salts with organic bases such as

dicyclohexylamine salts, N-methyl-D-glucamine, and salts with amino acids such as arginine, lysine, and so forth. Also, the basic nitrogen-containing groups may be quaternized with such agents as lower alkyl halides, such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, and butyl chloride, bromides and iodides; dialkyl sulfates like dimethyl, diethyl, dibutyl; and diamyl sulfates, long chain halides such as decyl, lauryl, myristyl and stearyl chlorides, bromides and iodides, aralkyl halides like benzyl and phenethyl bromides and others. Other pharmaceutically acceptable salts include the sulfate salt ethanolate and sulfate salts.

In one aspect, this method of treatment can be used where the disease is Alzheimer's disease.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can help prevent or delay the onset of Alzheimer's disease.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can help slow the progression of Alzheimer's disease.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can be used where the disease is mild cognitive impairment.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can be used where the disease is Down's syndrome.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can be used where the disease is Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can be used where the disease is cerebral amyloid angiopathy.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can be used where the disease is degenerative dementias.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can be used where the disease is diffuse Lewy body type of Alzheimer's disease.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can treat an existing disease, such as those listed above.

In another aspect, this method of treatment can prevent a disease, such as those listed above, from developing or progressing.

The methods of the invention employ therapeutically effective amounts: for oral administration from about 0.1 mg/day to about 1,000 mg/day; for parenteral, sublingual, intranasal, intrathecal administration from about 0.5 to about 100 mg/day; for depo administration and implants from about 0.5 mg/day to about 50 mg/day; for topical administration from about 0.5 mg/day to about 200 mg/day; for rectal administration from about 0.5 mg to about 500 mg.

In a preferred aspect, the therapeutically effective amounts for oral administration is from about 1 mg/day to about 100 mg/day; and for parenteral administration from about 5 to about 50 mg daily.

In a more preferred aspect, the therapeutically effective amounts for oral administration is from about 5 mg/day to about 50 mg/day.

20

The present invention also includes the use of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof for the manufacture of a medicament for use in treating a subject who has, or in preventing a subject from developing, a disease or condition selected from the group consisting of Alzheimer's disease, for helping prevent or delay the onset of Alzheimer's disease, for treating subjects with mild cognitive impairment (MCI) and preventing or delaying the onset of Alzheimer's disease in those who would progress from MCI to AD, for treating Down's syndrome, for treating humans who have Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type, for treating cerebral amyloid angiopathy and preventing its potential consequences, i.e. single and recurrent lobar

hemorrhages, for treating other degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative origin, dementia associated with Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia  
5 associated with progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, diffuse Lewy body type of Alzheimer's disease and who is in need of such treatment.

In one aspect, this use of a compound of formula (I)  
10 can be employed where the disease is Alzheimer's disease.

In another aspect, this use of a compound of formula (I) can help prevent or delay the onset of Alzheimer's disease.

In another aspect, this use of a compound of formula  
15 (I) can help slow the progression of Alzheimer's disease.

In another aspect, this use of a compound of formula (I) can be employed where the disease is mild cognitive impairment.

In another aspect, this use of a compound of formula  
20 (I) can be employed where the disease is Down's syndrome.

In another aspect, this use of a compound of formula (I) can be employed where the disease is Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type.

In another aspect, this use of a compound of formula  
25 (I) can be employed where the disease is cerebral amyloid angiopathy.

In another aspect, this use of a compound of formula (I) can be employed where the disease is degenerative dementias.

30 In another aspect, this use of a compound of formula (I) can be employed where the disease is diffuse Lewy body type of Alzheimer's disease.

In a preferred aspect, this use of a compound of formula (I) is a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of an

acid selected from the group consisting of acids hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, nitric, sulfuric, phosphoric, citric, methanesulfonic,  $\text{CH}_3-(\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{COOH}$  where  $n$  is 0 thru 4,  $\text{HOOC}-(\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{COOH}$  where  $n$  is as defined above, 5  $\text{HOOC}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{COOH}$ , and phenyl- $\text{COOH}$ .

In another preferred aspect of the invention, the subject or patient is preferably a human subject or patient.

10 The present invention also includes methods for inhibiting beta-secretase activity, for inhibiting cleavage of amyloid precursor protein (APP), in a reaction mixture, at a site between Met596 and Asp597, numbered for the APP-695 amino acid isotype, or at a corresponding site of an 15 isotype or mutant thereof; for inhibiting production of amyloid beta peptide (A beta) in a cell; for inhibiting the production of beta-amyloid plaque in an animal; and for treating or preventing a disease characterized by beta-amyloid deposits in the brain. These methods each include 20 administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

The present invention also includes a method for inhibiting beta-secretase activity, including exposing said 25 beta-secretase to an effective inhibitory amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In one aspect, this method includes exposing said beta-secretase to said compound *in vitro*.

30 In another aspect, this method includes exposing said beta-secretase to said compound in a cell.

In another aspect, this method includes exposing said beta-secretase to said compound in a cell in an animal.

In another aspect, this method includes exposing said beta-secretase to said compound in a human.

The present invention also includes a method for  
5 inhibiting cleavage of amyloid precursor protein (APP), in  
a reaction mixture, at a site between Met596 and Asp597,  
numbered for the APP-695 amino acid isotype; or at a  
corresponding site of an isotype or mutant thereof,  
including exposing said reaction mixture to an effective  
10 inhibitory amount of a compound of formula (I), or a  
pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In one aspect, this method employs a cleavage site:  
between Met652 and Asp653, numbered for the APP-751  
isotype; between Met 671 and Asp 672, numbered for the APP-  
15 770 isotype; between Leu596 and Asp597 of the APP-695  
Swedish Mutation; between Leu652 and Asp653 of the APP-751  
Swedish Mutation; or between Leu671 and Asp672 of the APP-  
770 Swedish Mutation.

In another aspect, this method exposes said reaction  
20 mixture *in vitro*.

In another aspect, this method exposes said reaction  
mixture in a cell.

In another aspect, this method exposes said reaction  
mixture in an animal cell.

25 In another aspect, this method exposes said reaction  
mixture in a human cell.

The present invention also includes a method for  
inhibiting production of amyloid beta peptide (A beta) in a  
cell, including administering to said cell an effective  
30 inhibitory amount of a compound of formula (I), or a  
pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In an embodiment, this method includes administering  
to an animal.



In an embodiment, this method includes administering to a human.

The present invention also includes a method for inhibiting the production of beta-amyloid plaque in an animal, including administering to said animal an effective inhibitory amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In one embodiment of this aspect, this method includes administering to a human.

10 The present invention also includes a method for treating or preventing a disease characterized by beta-amyloid deposits in the brain including administering to a subject an effective therapeutic amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15 In one aspect, this method employs a compound at a therapeutic amount in the range of from about 0.1 to about 1000 mg/day.

In another aspect, this method employs a compound at a therapeutic amount in the range of from about 15 to about 20 1500 mg/day.

In another aspect, this method employs a compound at a therapeutic amount in the range of from about 1 to about 100 mg/day.

In another aspect, this method employs a compound at a therapeutic amount in the range of from about 5 to about 50 25 mg/day.

In another aspect, this method can be used where said disease is Alzheimer's disease.

In another aspect, this method can be used where said 30 disease is Mild Cognitive Impairment, Down's Syndrome, or Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch Type.

The present invention also includes a composition including beta-secretase complexed with a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

The present invention also includes a method for  
5 producing a beta-secretase complex including exposing beta-secretase to a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in a reaction mixture under conditions suitable for the production of said complex.

10 In an embodiment, this method employs exposing *in vitro*.

In an embodiment, this method employs a reaction mixture that is a cell.

The present invention also includes a component kit  
15 including component parts capable of being assembled, in which at least one component part includes a compound of formula (I) enclosed in a container.

In an embodiment, this component kit includes lyophilized compound, and at least one further component  
20 part includes a diluent.

The present invention also includes a container kit including a plurality of containers, each container including one or more unit dose of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25 In an embodiment, this container kit includes each container adapted for oral delivery and includes a tablet, gel, or capsule.

In an embodiment, this container kit includes each container adapted for parenteral delivery and includes a  
30 depot product, syringe, ampoule, or vial.

In an embodiment, this container kit includes each container adapted for topical delivery and includes a patch, medipad, ointment, or cream.

The present invention also includes an agent kit including a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; and one or more therapeutic agents selected from the group consisting of an antioxidant, an  
5 anti-inflammatory, a gamma secretase inhibitor, a neurotrophic agent, an acetyl cholinesterase inhibitor, a statin, an A beta peptide, and an anti-A beta antibody.

The present invention provides compounds, compositions, kits, and methods for inhibiting beta-  
10 secretase-mediated cleavage of amyloid precursor protein (APP). More particularly, the compounds, compositions, and methods of the invention are effective to inhibit the production of A beta peptide and to treat or prevent any human or veterinary disease or condition associated with a  
15 pathological form of A beta peptide.

The compounds, compositions, and methods of the invention are useful for treating humans who have Alzheimer's Disease (AD), for helping prevent or delay the onset of AD, for treating subjects with mild cognitive  
20 impairment (MCI), and preventing or delaying the onset of AD in those subjects who would otherwise be expected to progress from MCI to AD, for treating Down's syndrome, for treating Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch Type, for treating cerebral beta-amyloid  
25 angiopathy and preventing its potential consequences such as single and recurrent lobar hemorrhages, for treating other degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative origin, for treating dementia associated with Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal  
30 dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia associated with progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, and diffuse Lewy body type AD.

The compounds of the invention possess beta-secretase inhibitory activity. The inhibitory activities of the compounds of the invention are readily demonstrated, for example, using one or more of the assays described herein or known in the art.

The compounds of formula (I) can form salts when reacted with acids. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts are generally preferred over the corresponding compounds of formula (I) since they frequently produce compounds which are usually more water soluble, stable and/or more crystalline. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts are any salt which retains the activity of the parent compound and does not impart any deleterious or undesirable effect on the subject to whom it is administered and in the context in which it is administered. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts include acid addition salts of both inorganic and organic acids. The preferred pharmaceutically acceptable salts include salts of the following acids acetic, aspartic, benzenesulfonic, benzoic, bicarbonic, bisulfuric, bitartaric, butyric, calcium edetate, camsylic, carbonic, chlorobenzoic, citric, edetic, edisylic, estolic, esyl, esylic, formic, fumaric, gluceptic, gluconic, glutamic, glycollylarsanilic, hexamic, hexylresorcinoic, hydrabamic, hydrobromic, hydrochloric, hydroiodic, hydroxynaphthoic, isethionic, lactic, lactobionic, maleic, malic, malonic, mandelic, methanesulfonic, methylnitric, methylsulfuric, mucic, muconic, napsylic, nitric, oxalic, p-nitromethanesulfonic, pamoic, pantothenic, phosphoric, monohydrogen phosphoric, dihydrogen phosphoric, phthalic, polygalactouronic, propionic, salicylic, stearic, succinic, succinic, sulfamic, sulfanilic, sulfonic, sulfuric, tannic, tartaric, teoclic and toluenesulfonic. For other acceptable salts, see *Int. J. Pharm.*, 33, 201-217 (1986) and *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 66(1), 1, (1977).

The present invention provides kits, and methods for inhibiting beta-secretase enzyme activity and A beta peptide production. Inhibition of beta-secretase enzyme activity halts or reduces the production of A beta from APP and reduces or eliminates the formation of beta-amyloid deposits in the brain.

The compounds, compositions, and methods of the invention are useful for treating humans who have Alzheimer's Disease (AD), for helping prevent or delay the onset of AD, for treating subjects with mild cognitive impairment (MCI), and preventing or delaying the onset of AD in those subjects who would otherwise be expected to progress from MCI to AD, for treating Down's syndrome, for treating Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch Type, for treating cerebral beta-amyloid angiopathy and preventing its potential consequences such as single and recurrent lobar hemorrhages, for treating other degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative origin, for treating dementia associated with Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia associated with progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, and diffuse Lewy body type AD.

The compounds of the invention possess beta-secretase inhibitory activity. The inhibitory activities of the compounds of the invention are readily demonstrated, for example, using one or more of the assays described herein or known in the art.

The compounds of formula (I) can form salts when reacted with acids. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts are generally preferred over the corresponding compounds of formula (I) since they frequently produce compounds which

are usually more water soluble, stable and/or more crystalline. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts are any salt which retains the activity of the parent compound and does not impart any deleterious or undesirable effect on the subject to whom it is administered and in the context in which it is administered. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts include acid addition salts of both inorganic and organic acids. The preferred pharmaceutically acceptable salts include salts of the following acids acetic, aspartic, benzenesulfonic, benzoic, bicarbonic, bisulfuric, bitartaric, butyric, calcium edetate, camsylic, carbonic, chlorobenzoic, citric, edetic, edisylic, estolic, esyl, esylic, formic, fumaric, gluceptic, gluconic, glutamic, glycollylarsanilic, hexamic, hexylresorcinoic, hydrabamic, hydrobromic, hydrochloric, hydroiodic, hydroxynaphthoic, isethionic, lactic, lactobionic, maleic, malic, malonic, mandelic, methanesulfonic, methylnitric, methylsulfuric, mucic, muconic, napsylic, nitric, oxalic, p-nitromethanesulfonic, pamoic, pantothenic, phosphoric, monohydrogen phosphoric, dihydrogen phosphoric, phthalic, polygalactouronic, propionic, salicylic, stearic, succinic, succinic, sulfamic, sulfanilic, sulfonic, sulfuric, tannic, tartaric, teoclic and toluenesulfonic. For other acceptable salts, see *Int. J. Pharm.*, 33, 201-217 (1986) and *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 66(1), 1, (1977).

The present invention provides kits, and methods for inhibiting beta-secretase enzyme activity and A beta peptide production. Inhibition of beta-secretase enzyme activity halts or reduces the production of A beta from APP and reduces or eliminates the formation of beta-amyloid deposits in the brain.

### Methods of the Invention

The compounds of the invention, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, are useful for treating humans or animals suffering from a condition characterized by a pathological form of beta-amyloid peptide, such as beta-amyloid plaques, and for helping to prevent or delay the onset of such a condition. For example, the compounds are useful for treating Alzheimer's disease, for helping prevent or delay the onset of Alzheimer's disease, for treating subjects with MCI (mild cognitive impairment) and preventing or delaying the onset of Alzheimer's disease in those who would progress from MCI to AD, for treating Down's syndrome, for treating humans who have Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type, for treating cerebral amyloid angiopathy and preventing its potential consequences, i.e. single and recurrent lobar hemorrhages, for treating other degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative origin, dementia associated with Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia associated with progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, and diffuse Lewy body type Alzheimer's disease. The compounds and compositions of the invention are particularly useful for treating, preventing, or slowing the progression of Alzheimer's disease. When treating or preventing these diseases, the compounds of the invention can either be used individually or in combination, as is best for the subject or subject.

With regard to these diseases, the term "treating" means that compounds of the invention can be used in humans with existing disease. The compounds of the invention will not necessarily cure the subject who has the disease but will delay or slow the progression or prevent further

progression of the disease thereby giving the individual a more useful life span.

The term "preventing" means that that if the compounds of the invention are administered to those who do not now  
5 have the disease but who would normally develop the disease or be at increased risk for the disease, they will not develop the disease. In addition, "preventing" also includes delaying the development of the disease in an individual who will ultimately develop the disease or would  
10 be at risk for the disease due to age, familial history, genetic or chromosomal abnormalities, and/or due to the presence of one or more biological markers for the disease, such as a known genetic mutation of APP or APP cleavage products in brain tissues or fluids. By delaying the onset  
15 of the disease, compounds of the invention have prevented the individual from getting the disease during the period in which the individual would normally have gotten the disease or reduce the rate of development of the disease or some of its effects but for the administration of compounds  
20 of the invention up to the time the individual ultimately gets the disease. Preventing also includes administration of the compounds of the invention to those individuals thought to be predisposed to the disease.

In a preferred aspect, the compounds of the invention  
25 are useful for slowing the progression of disease symptoms.

In another preferred aspect, the compounds of the invention are useful for preventing the further progression of disease symptoms.

In treating or preventing the above diseases, the  
30 compounds of the invention are administered in a therapeutically effective amount. The therapeutically effective amount will vary depending on the particular compound used and the route of administration, as is known to those skilled in the art.



In treating a subject displaying any of the diagnosed above conditions a physician may administer a compound of the invention immediately and continue administration indefinitely, as needed. In treating subjects who are not  
5 diagnosed as having Alzheimer's disease, but who are believed to be at substantial risk for Alzheimer's disease, the physician should preferably start treatment when the subject first experiences early pre-Alzheimer's symptoms such as, memory or cognitive problems associated with  
10 aging. In addition, there are some subjects who may be determined to be at risk for developing Alzheimer's through the detection of a genetic marker such as APOE4 or other biological indicators that are predictive for Alzheimer's disease. In these situations, even though the subject does  
15 not have symptoms of the disease, administration of the compounds of the invention may be started before symptoms appear, and treatment may be continued indefinitely to prevent or delay the onset of the disease.

## 20 Dosage Forms and Amounts

The compounds of the invention can be administered orally, parenterally, (IV, IM, depo-IM, SQ, and depo SQ), sublingually, intranasally (inhalation), intrathecally, topically, or rectally. Dosage forms known to those of  
25 skill in the art are suitable for delivery of the compounds of the invention.

Compositions are provided that contain therapeutically effective amounts of the compounds of the invention. The compounds are preferably formulated into suitable  
30 pharmaceutical preparations such as tablets, capsules, or elixirs for oral administration or in sterile solutions or suspensions for parenteral administration. Typically the compounds described above are formulated into

pharmaceutical compositions using techniques and procedures well known in the art.

About 1 to 500 mg of a compound or mixture of compounds of the invention or a physiologically acceptable salt or ester is compounded with a physiologically acceptable vehicle, carrier, excipient, binder, preservative, stabilizer, flavor, etc., in a unit dosage form as called for by accepted pharmaceutical practice. The amount of active substance in those compositions or preparations is such that a suitable dosage in the range indicated is obtained. The compositions are preferably formulated in a unit dosage form, each dosage containing from about 2 to about 100 mg, more preferably about 10 to about 30 mg of the active ingredient. The term "unit dosage form" refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages for human subjects and other mammals, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active material calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect, in association with a suitable pharmaceutical excipient.

To prepare compositions, one or more compounds of the invention are mixed with a suitable pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Upon mixing or addition of the compound(s), the resulting mixture may be a solution, suspension, emulsion, or the like. Liposomal suspensions may also be suitable as pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. These may be prepared according to methods known to those skilled in the art. The form of the resulting mixture depends upon a number of factors, including the intended mode of administration and the solubility of the compound in the selected carrier or vehicle. The effective concentration is sufficient for lessening or ameliorating at least one symptom of the disease, disorder, or condition treated and may be empirically determined.

Pharmaceutical carriers or vehicles suitable for administration of the compounds provided herein include any such carriers known to those skilled in the art to be suitable for the particular mode of administration. In addition, the active materials can also be mixed with other active materials that do not impair the desired action, or with materials that supplement the desired action, or have another action. The compounds may be formulated as the sole pharmaceutically active ingredient in the composition or may be combined with other active ingredients.

Where the compounds exhibit insufficient solubility, methods for solubilizing may be used. Such methods are known and include, but are not limited to, using cosolvents such as dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO), using surfactants such as Tween®, and dissolution in aqueous sodium bicarbonate. Derivatives of the compounds, such as salts or prodrugs may also be used in formulating effective pharmaceutical compositions.

The concentration of the compound is effective for delivery of an amount upon administration that lessens or ameliorates at least one symptom of the disorder for which the compound is administered. Typically, the compositions are formulated for single dosage administration.

The compounds of the invention may be prepared with carriers that protect them against rapid elimination from the body, such as time-release formulations or coatings. Such carriers include controlled release formulations, such as, but not limited to, microencapsulated delivery systems. The active compound is included in the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier in an amount sufficient to exert a therapeutically useful effect in the absence of undesirable side effects on the subject treated. The therapeutically effective concentration may be determined empirically by

testing the compounds in known *in vitro* and *in vivo* model systems for the treated disorder.

The compounds and compositions of the invention can be enclosed in multiple or single dose containers. The enclosed compounds and compositions can be provided in  
5 kits, for example, including component parts that can be assembled for use. For example, a compound inhibitor in lyophilized form and a suitable diluent may be provided as separated components for combination prior to use. A kit  
10 may include a compound inhibitor and a second therapeutic agent for co-administration. The inhibitor and second therapeutic agent may be provided as separate component parts. A kit may include a plurality of containers, each container holding one or more unit dose of the compound of  
15 the invention. The containers are preferably adapted for the desired mode of administration, including, but not limited to tablets, gel capsules, sustained-release capsules, and the like for oral administration; depot products, pre-filled syringes, ampoules, vials, and the  
20 like for parenteral administration; and patches, medipads, creams, and the like for topical administration.

The concentration of active compound in the drug composition will depend on absorption, inactivation, and excretion rates of the active compound, the dosage  
25 schedule, and amount administered as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art.

The active ingredient may be administered at once, or may be divided into a number of smaller doses to be administered at intervals of time. It is understood that  
30 the precise dosage and duration of treatment is a function of the disease being treated and may be determined empirically using known testing protocols or by extrapolation from *in vivo* or *in vitro* test data. It is to be noted that concentrations and dosage values may also

vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions, and that the concentration ranges set forth herein are exemplary only and are not intended to limit the scope or practice of the claimed compositions.

10 If oral administration is desired, the compound should be provided in a composition that protects it from the acidic environment of the stomach. For example, the composition can be formulated in an enteric coating that maintains its integrity in the stomach and releases the active compound in the intestine. The composition may also be formulated in combination with an antacid or other such ingredient.

Oral compositions will generally include an inert diluent or an edible carrier and may be compressed into tablets or enclosed in gelatin capsules. For the purpose of oral therapeutic administration, the active compound or compounds can be incorporated with excipients and used in the form of tablets, capsules, or troches. Pharmaceutically compatible binding agents and adjuvant materials can be included as part of the composition.

25 The tablets, pills, capsules, troches, and the like can contain any of the following ingredients or compounds of a similar nature: a binder such as, but not limited to, gum tragacanth, acacia, corn starch, or gelatin; an excipient such as microcrystalline cellulose, starch, or lactose; a disintegrating agent such as, but not limited to, alginic acid and corn starch; a lubricant such as, but not limited to, magnesium stearate; a gildant, such as, but not limited to, colloidal silicon dioxide; a sweetening

agent such as sucrose or saccharin; and a flavoring agent such as peppermint, methyl salicylate, or fruit flavoring.

When the dosage unit form is a capsule, it can contain, in addition to material of the above type, a liquid carrier such as a fatty oil. In addition, dosage unit forms can contain various other materials, which modify the physical form of the dosage unit, for example, coatings of sugar and other enteric agents. The compounds can also be administered as a component of an elixir, suspension, syrup, wafer, chewing gum or the like. A syrup may contain, in addition to the active compounds, sucrose as a sweetening agent and certain preservatives, dyes and colorings, and flavors.

The active materials can also be mixed with other active materials that do not impair the desired action, or with materials that supplement the desired action.

Solutions or suspensions used for parenteral, intradermal, subcutaneous, or topical application can include any of the following components: a sterile diluent such as water for injection, saline solution, fixed oil, a naturally occurring vegetable oil such as sesame oil, coconut oil, peanut oil, cottonseed oil, and the like, or a synthetic fatty vehicle such as ethyl oleate, and the like, polyethylene glycol, glycerine, propylene glycol, or other synthetic solvent; antimicrobial agents such as benzyl alcohol and methyl parabens; antioxidants such as ascorbic acid and sodium bisulfite; chelating agents such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA); buffers such as acetates, citrates, and phosphates; and agents for the adjustment of tonicity such as sodium chloride and dextrose. Parenteral preparations can be enclosed in ampoules, disposable syringes, or multiple dose vials made of glass, plastic, or other suitable material. Buffers,

preservatives, antioxidants, and the like can be incorporated as required.

Where administered intravenously, suitable carriers include physiological saline, phosphate buffered saline (PBS), and solutions containing thickening and solubilizing agents such as glucose, polyethylene glycol, polypropyleneglycol, and mixtures thereof. Liposomal suspensions including tissue-targeted liposomes may also be suitable as pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. These may be prepared according to methods known for example, as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,522,811.

The active compounds may be prepared with carriers that protect the compound against rapid elimination from the body, such as time-release formulations or coatings. Such carriers include controlled release formulations, such as, but not limited to, implants and microencapsulated delivery systems, and biodegradable, biocompatible polymers such as collagen, ethylene vinyl acetate, polyanhydrides, polyglycolic acid, polyorthoesters, polylactic acid, and the like. Methods for preparation of such formulations are known to those skilled in the art.

The compounds of the invention can be administered orally, parenterally (IV, IM, depo-IM, SQ, and depo-SQ), sublingually, intranasally (inhalation), intrathecally, topically, or rectally. Dosage forms known to those skilled in the art are suitable for delivery of the compounds of the invention.

Compounds of the invention may be administered enterally or parenterally. When administered orally, compounds of the invention can be administered in usual dosage forms for oral administration as is well known to those skilled in the art. These dosage forms include the usual solid unit dosage forms of tablets and capsules as well as liquid dosage forms such as solutions, suspensions,

and elixirs. When the solid dosage forms are used, it is preferred that they be of the sustained release type so that the compounds of the invention need to be administered only once or twice daily.

5       The oral dosage forms are administered to the subject 1, 2, 3, or 4 times daily. It is preferred that the compounds of the invention be administered either three or fewer times, more preferably once or twice daily. Hence, it is preferred that the compounds of the invention be  
10 administered in oral dosage form. It is preferred that whatever oral dosage form is used, that it be designed so as to protect the compounds of the invention from the acidic environment of the stomach. Enteric coated tablets are well known to those skilled in the art. In addition,  
15 capsules filled with small spheres each coated to protect from the acidic stomach, are also well known to those skilled in the art.

When administered orally, an administered amount therapeutically effective to inhibit beta-secretase  
20 activity, to inhibit A beta production, to inhibit A beta deposition, or to treat or prevent AD is from about 0.1 mg/day to about 1,000 mg/day. It is preferred that the oral dosage is from about 1 mg/day to about 100 mg/day. It is more preferred that the oral dosage is from about 5  
25 mg/day to about 50 mg/day. It is understood that while a subject may be started at one dose, that dose may be varied over time as the subject's condition changes.

Compounds of the invention may also be advantageously delivered in a nano crystal dispersion formulation.  
30 Preparation of such formulations is described, for example, in U.S. Patent 5,145,684. Nano crystalline dispersions of HIV protease inhibitors and their method of use are described in U.S. Patent No. 6,045,829. The nano



crystalline formulations typically afford greater bioavailability of drug compounds.

5 The compounds of the invention can be administered parenterally, for example, by IV, IM, depo-IM, SC, or depo-SC. When administered parenterally, a therapeutically effective amount of about 0.5 to about 100 mg/day, preferably from about 5 to about 50 mg daily should be delivered. When a depot formulation is used for injection  
10 once a month or once every two weeks, the dose should be about 0.5 mg/day to about 50 mg/day, or a monthly dose of from about 15 mg to about 1,500 mg. In part because of the forgetfulness of the subjects with Alzheimer's disease, it is preferred that the parenteral dosage form be a depo formulation.

15 The compounds of the invention can be administered sublingually. When given sublingually, the compounds of the invention should be given one to four times daily in the amounts described above for IM administration.

The compounds of the invention can be administered  
20 intranasally. When given by this route, the appropriate dosage forms are a nasal spray or dry powder, as is known to those skilled in the art. The dosage of the compounds of the invention for intranasal administration is the amount described above for IM administration.

25 The compounds of the invention can be administered intrathecally. When given by this route the appropriate dosage form can be a parenteral dosage form as is known to those skilled in the art. The dosage of the compounds of the invention for intrathecal administration is the amount  
30 described above for IM administration.

The compounds of the invention can be administered topically. When given by this route, the appropriate dosage form is a cream, ointment, or patch. Because of the amount of the compounds of the invention to be

administered, the patch is preferred. When administered topically, the dosage is from about 0.5 mg/day to about 200 mg/day. Because the amount that can be delivered by a patch is limited, two or more patches may be used. The  
5 number and size of the patch is not important, what is important is that a therapeutically effective amount of the compounds of the invention be delivered as is known to those skilled in the art. The compounds of the invention can be administered rectally by suppository as is known to  
10 those skilled in the art. When administered by suppository, the therapeutically effective amount is from about 0.5 mg to about 500 mg.

The compounds of the invention can be administered by implants as is known to those skilled in the art. When  
15 administering a compound of the invention by implant, the therapeutically effective amount is the amount described above for depot administration.

The invention here is the new compounds of the invention and new methods of using the compounds of the  
20 invention. Given a particular compound of the invention and a desired dosage form, one skilled in the art would know how to prepare and administer the appropriate dosage form.

The compounds of the invention are used in the same  
25 manner, by the same routes of administration, using the same pharmaceutical dosage forms, and at the same dosing schedule as described above, for preventing disease or treating subjects with MCI (mild cognitive impairment) and preventing or delaying the onset of Alzheimer's disease in those who  
30 would progress from MCI to AD, for treating or preventing Down's syndrome, for treating humans who have Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type, for treating cerebral amyloid angiopathy and preventing its potential consequences, i.e. single and recurrent lobar

hemorrhages, for treating other degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative origin, dementia associated with Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia  
5 associated with progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, and diffuse Lewy body type of Alzheimer's disease.

The compounds of the invention can be used with each other or with other agents used to treat or prevent the  
10 conditions listed above. Such agents include gamma-secretase inhibitors, anti-amyloid vaccines and pharmaceutical agents such as donepezil hydrochloride (ARICEPT Tablets), tacrine hydrochloride (COGNEX Capsules) or other acetylcholine esterase inhibitors and with direct  
15 or indirect neurotropic agents of the future.

In addition, the compounds of the invention can also be used with inhibitors of P-glycoprotein (P-gp). The use of P-gp inhibitors is known to those skilled in the art. See for example, *Cancer Research*, 53, 4595-4602 (1993),  
20 *Clin. Cancer Res.*, 2, 7-12 (1996), *Cancer Research*, 56, 4171-4179 (1996), International Publications WO99/64001 and WO01/10387. The important thing is that the blood level of the P-gp inhibitor be such that it exerts its effect in inhibiting P-gp from decreasing brain blood levels of the  
25 compounds of the invention. To that end the P-gp inhibitor and the compounds of the invention can be administered at the same time, by the same or different route of administration, or at different times. The important thing is not the time of administration but having an effective  
30 blood level of the P-gp inhibitor.

Suitable P-gp inhibitors include cyclosporin A, verapamil, tamoxifen, quinidine, Vitamin E-TGPS, ritonavir, megestrol acetate, progesterone, rapamycin, 10,11-methanodibenzosuberane, phenothiazines, acridine

derivatives such as GF120918, FK506, VX-710, LY335979, PSC-833, GF-102,918 and other steroids. It is to be understood that additional agents will be found that do the same function and are also considered to be useful.

5       The P-gp inhibitors can be administered orally, parenterally, (IV, IM, IM-depo, SQ, SQ-depo), topically, sublingually, rectally, intranasally, intrathecally and by implant.

10       The therapeutically effective amount of the P-gp inhibitors is from about 0.1 to about 300 mg/kg/day, preferably about 0.1 to about 150 mg/kg daily. It is understood that while a subject may be started on one dose, that dose may have to be varied over time as the subject's condition changes.

15       When administered orally, the P-gp inhibitors can be administered in usual dosage forms for oral administration as is known to those skilled in the art. These dosage forms include the usual solid unit dosage forms of tablets and capsules as well as liquid dosage forms such as  
20       solutions, suspensions and elixirs. When the solid dosage forms are used, it is preferred that they be of the sustained release type so that the P-gp inhibitors need to be administered only once or twice daily. The oral dosage forms are administered to the subject one through four  
25       times daily. It is preferred that the P-gp inhibitors be administered either three or fewer times a day, more preferably once or twice daily. Hence, it is preferred that the P-gp inhibitors be administered in solid dosage form and further it is preferred that the solid dosage form  
30       be a sustained release form which permits once or twice daily dosing. It is preferred that what ever dosage form is used, that it be designed so as to protect the P-gp inhibitors from the acidic environment of the stomach. Enteric coated tablets are well known to those skilled in

the art. In addition, capsules filled with small spheres each coated to protect from the acidic stomach, are also well known to those skilled in the art.

5 In addition, the P-gp inhibitors can be administered parenterally. When administered parenterally they can be administered IV, IM, depo-IM, SQ or depo-SQ. The P-gp inhibitors can be given sublingually. When given sublingually, the P-gp inhibitors should be given one thru four times daily in the same amount as for IM  
10 administration.

The P-gp inhibitors can be given intranasally. When given by this route of administration, the appropriate dosage forms are a nasal spray or dry powder as is known to those skilled in the art. The dosage of the P-gp  
15 inhibitors for intranasal administration is the same as for IM administration.

The P-gp inhibitors can be given intrathecally. When given by this route of administration the appropriate dosage form can be a parenteral dosage form as is known to  
20 those skilled in the art.

The P-gp inhibitors can be given topically. When given by this route of administration, the appropriate dosage form is a cream, ointment or patch. Because of the amount of the P-gp inhibitors needed to be administered the path is  
25 preferred. However, the amount that can be delivered by a patch is limited. Therefore, two or more patches may be required. The number and size of the patch is not important, what is important is that a therapeutically effective amount of the P-gp inhibitors be delivered as is  
30 known to those skilled in the art. The P-gp inhibitors can be administered rectally by suppository as is known to those skilled in the art.

The P-gp inhibitors can be administered by implants as is known to those skilled in the art.

There is nothing novel about the route of administration nor the dosage forms for administering the P-gp inhibitors. Given a particular P-gp inhibitor, and a desired dosage form, one skilled in the art would know how to prepare the appropriate dosage form for the P-gp inhibitor.

The compounds employed in the methods of the invention can be used in combination, with each other or with other therapeutic agents or approaches used to treat or prevent the conditions listed above. Such agents or approaches include: acetylcholine esterase inhibitors such as tacrine (tetrahydroaminoacridine, marketed as COGNEX®), donepezil hydrochloride, (marketed as Aricept® and rivastigmine (marketed as Exelon®); gamma-secretase inhibitors; anti-inflammatory agents such as cyclooxygenase II inhibitors; anti-oxidants such as Vitamin E and ginkgolides; immunological approaches, such as, for example, immunization with A beta peptide or administration of anti-A beta peptide antibodies; statins; and direct or indirect neurotropic agents such as Cerebrolysin®, AIT-082 (Emilieu, 2000, Arch. Neurol. 57:454), and other neurotropic agents of the future.

It should be apparent to one skilled in the art that the exact dosage and frequency of administration will depend on the particular compounds employed in the methods of the invention administered, the particular condition being treated, the severity of the condition being treated, the age, weight, general physical condition of the particular subject, and other medication the individual may be taking as is well known to administering physicians who are skilled in this art.

### Inhibition of APP Cleavage

The compounds of the invention inhibit cleavage of APP between Met595 and Asp596 numbered for the APP695 isoform, or a mutant thereof, or at a corresponding site of a different isoform, such as APP751 or APP770, or a mutant thereof (sometimes referred to as the "beta secretase site"). While not wishing to be bound by a particular theory, inhibition of beta-secretase activity is thought to inhibit production of beta amyloid peptide (A beta). Inhibitory activity is demonstrated in one of a variety of inhibition assays, whereby cleavage of an APP substrate in the presence of a beta-secretase enzyme is analyzed in the presence of the inhibitory compound, under conditions normally sufficient to result in cleavage at the beta-secretase cleavage site. Reduction of APP cleavage at the beta-secretase cleavage site compared with an untreated or inactive control is correlated with inhibitory activity. Assay systems that can be used to demonstrate efficacy of the compound inhibitors of the invention are known. Representative assay systems are described, for example, in U.S. Patents No. 5,942,400, 5,744,346, as well as in the Examples below.

The enzymatic activity of beta-secretase and the production of A beta can be analyzed *in vitro* or *in vivo*, using natural, mutated, and/or synthetic APP substrates, natural, mutated, and/or synthetic enzyme, and the test compound. The analysis may involve primary or secondary cells expressing native, mutant, and/or synthetic APP and enzyme, animal models expressing native APP and enzyme, or may utilize transgenic animal models expressing the substrate and enzyme. Detection of enzymatic activity can be by analysis of one or more of the cleavage products, for example, by immunoassay, fluorometric or chromogenic assay, HPLC, or other means of detection. Inhibitory compounds

are determined as those having the ability to decrease the amount of beta-secretase cleavage product produced in comparison to a control, where beta-secretase mediated cleavage in the reaction system is observed and measured in the absence of inhibitory compounds.

### Beta-Secretase

Various forms of beta-secretase enzyme are known, and are available and useful for assay of enzyme activity and inhibition of enzyme activity. These include native, recombinant, and synthetic forms of the enzyme. Human beta-secretase is known as Beta Site APP Cleaving Enzyme (BACE), Asp2, and memapsin 2, and has been characterized, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 5,744,346 and published PCT patent applications WO98/22597, WO00/03819, WO01/23533, and WO00/17369, as well as in literature publications (Hussain et al., 1999, *Mol. Cell. Neurosci.* 14:419-427; Vassar et al., 1999, *Science* 286:735-741; Yan et al., 1999, *Nature* 402:533-537; Sinha et al., 1999, *Nature* 40:537-540; and Lin et al., 2000, *PNAS USA* 97:1456-1460). Synthetic forms of the enzyme have also been described (WO98/22597 and WO00/17369). Beta-secretase can be extracted and purified from human brain tissue and can be produced in cells, for example mammalian cells expressing recombinant enzyme.

Preferred methods employ compounds that are effective to inhibit 50% of beta-secretase enzymatic activity at a concentration of less than about 50 micromolar, preferably at a concentration of less than about 10 micromolar, more preferably less than about 1 micromolar, and most preferably less than about 10 nanomolar.



### APP Substrate

Assays that demonstrate inhibition of beta-secretase-mediated cleavage of APP can utilize any of the known forms of APP, including the 695 amino acid "normal" isotype described by Kang et al., 1987, Nature 325:733-6, the 770 amino acid isotype described by Kitaguchi et. al., 1981, Nature 331:530-532, and variants such as the Swedish Mutation (KM670-1NL) (APP-SW), the London Mutation (V7176F), and others. See, for example, U.S. Patent No. 5,766,846 and also Hardy, 1992, Nature Genet. 1:233-234, for a review of known variant mutations. Additional useful substrates include the dibasic amino acid modification, APP-KK disclosed, for example, in WO 00/17369, fragments of APP, and synthetic peptides containing the beta-secretase cleavage site, wild type (WT) or mutated form, e.g., SW, as described, for example, in U.S. Patent No 5,942,400 and WO00/03819.

The APP substrate contains the beta-secretase cleavage site of APP (KM-DA or NL-DA) for example, a complete APP peptide or variant, an APP fragment, a recombinant or synthetic APP, or a fusion peptide. Preferably, the fusion peptide includes the beta-secretase cleavage site fused to a peptide having a moiety useful for enzymatic assay, for example, having isolation and/or detection properties. A useful moiety may be an antigenic epitope for antibody binding, a label or other detection moiety, a binding substrate, and the like.

### Antibodies

Products characteristic of APP cleavage can be measured by immunoassay using various antibodies, as described, for example, in Pirttila et al., 1999, Neuro. Lett. 249:21-4, and in U.S. Patent No. 5,612,486. Useful

antibodies to detect A beta include, for example, the monoclonal antibody 6E10 (Senetek, St. Louis, MO) that specifically recognizes an epitope on amino acids 1-16 of the A beta peptide; antibodies 162 and 164 (New York State  
5 Institute for Basic Research, Staten Island, NY) that are specific for human A beta 1-40 and 1-42, respectively; and antibodies that recognize the junction region of beta-amyloid peptide, the site between residues 16 and 17, as described in U.S. Patent No. 5,593,846. Antibodies raised  
10 against a synthetic peptide of residues 591 to 596 of APP and SW192 antibody raised against 590-596 of the Swedish mutation are also useful in immunoassay of APP and its cleavage products, as described in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,604,102 and 5,721,130.

### Assay Systems

Assays for determining APP cleavage at the beta-secretase cleavage site are well known in the art. Exemplary assays, are described, for example, in U.S.  
20 Patent Nos. 5,744,346 and 5,942,400, and described in the Examples below.

### Cell Free Assays

Exemplary assays that can be used to demonstrate the  
25 inhibitory activity of the compounds of the invention are described, for example, in WO00/17369, WO 00/03819, and U.S. Patents No. 5,942,400 and 5,744,346. Such assays can be performed in cell-free incubations or in cellular incubations using cells expressing a beta-secretase and an  
30 APP substrate having a beta-secretase cleavage site.

An APP substrate containing the beta-secretase cleavage site of APP, for example, a complete APP or variant, an APP fragment, or a recombinant or synthetic APP substrate containing the amino acid sequence: KM-DA or NL-

DA, is incubated in the presence of beta-secretase enzyme, a fragment thereof, or a synthetic or recombinant polypeptide variant having beta-secretase activity and effective to cleave the beta-secretase cleavage site of APP, under incubation conditions suitable for the cleavage activity of the enzyme. Suitable substrates optionally include derivatives that may be fusion proteins or peptides that contain the substrate peptide and a modification useful to facilitate the purification or detection of the peptide or its beta-secretase cleavage products. Useful modifications include the insertion of a known antigenic epitope for antibody binding; the linking of a label or detectable moiety, the linking of a binding substrate, and the like.

Suitable incubation conditions for a cell-free *in vitro* assay include, for example: approximately 200 nanomolar to 10 micromolar substrate, approximately 10 to 200 picomolar enzyme, and approximately 0.1 nanomolar to 10 micromolar inhibitor compound, in aqueous solution, at an approximate pH of 4 -7, at approximately 37 degrees C, for a time period of approximately 10 minutes to 3 hours. These incubation conditions are exemplary only, and can be varied as required for the particular assay components and/or desired measurement system. Optimization of the incubation conditions for the particular assay components should account for the specific beta-secretase enzyme used and its pH optimum, any additional enzymes and/or markers that might be used in the assay, and the like. Such optimization is routine and will not require undue experimentation.

One useful assay utilizes a fusion peptide having maltose binding protein (MBP) fused to the C-terminal 125 amino acids of APP-SW. The MBP portion is captured on an assay substrate by anti-MBP capture antibody. Incubation

of the captured fusion protein in the presence of beta-secretase results in cleavage of the substrate at the beta-secretase cleavage site. Analysis of the cleavage activity can be, for example, by immunoassay of cleavage products.

5 One such immunoassay detects a unique epitope exposed at the carboxy terminus of the cleaved fusion protein, for example, using the antibody SW192. This assay is described, for example, in U.S. Patent No 5,942,400.

#### 10 Cellular Assay

Numerous cell-based assays can be used to analyze beta-secretase activity and/or processing of APP to release A beta. Contact of an APP substrate with a beta-secretase enzyme within the cell and in the presence or absence of a  
15 compound inhibitor of the invention can be used to demonstrate beta-secretase inhibitory activity of the compound. Preferably, assay in the presence of a useful inhibitory compound provides at least about 30%, most preferably at least about 50% inhibition of the enzymatic  
20 activity, as compared with a non-inhibited control.

In one embodiment, cells that naturally express beta-secretase are used. Alternatively, cells are modified to express a recombinant beta-secretase or synthetic variant enzyme as discussed above. The APP substrate may be added  
25 to the culture medium and is preferably expressed in the cells. Cells that naturally express APP, variant or mutant forms of APP, or cells transformed to express an isoform of APP, mutant or variant APP, recombinant or synthetic APP, APP fragment, or synthetic APP peptide or fusion protein  
30 containing the beta-secretase APP cleavage site can be used, provided that the expressed APP is permitted to contact the enzyme and enzymatic cleavage activity can be analyzed.

Human cell lines that normally process A beta from APP provide a useful means to assay inhibitory activities of the compounds of the invention. Production and release of A beta and/or other cleavage products into the culture medium can be measured, for example by immunoassay, such as Western blot or enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA) such as by ELISA.

Cells expressing an APP substrate and an active beta-secretase can be incubated in the presence of a compound inhibitor to demonstrate inhibition of enzymatic activity as compared with a control. Activity of beta-secretase can be measured by analysis of one or more cleavage products of the APP substrate. For example, inhibition of beta-secretase activity against the substrate APP would be expected to decrease release of specific beta-secretase induced APP cleavage products such as A beta.

Although both neural and non-neural cells process and release A beta, levels of endogenous beta-secretase activity are low and often difficult to detect by EIA. The use of cell types known to have enhanced beta-secretase activity, enhanced processing of APP to A beta, and/or enhanced production of A beta are therefore preferred. For example, transfection of cells with the Swedish Mutant form of APP (APP-SW); with APP-KK; or with APP-SW-KK provides cells having enhanced beta-secretase activity and producing amounts of A beta that can be readily measured.

In such assays, for example, the cells expressing APP and beta-secretase are incubated in a culture medium under conditions suitable for beta-secretase enzymatic activity at its cleavage site on the APP substrate. On exposure of the cells to the compound inhibitor, the amount of A beta released into the medium and/or the amount of CTF99 fragments of APP in the cell lysates is reduced as compared with the control. The cleavage products of APP can be

analyzed, for example, by immune reactions with specific antibodies, as discussed above.

Preferred cells for analysis of beta-secretase activity include primary human neuronal cells, primary  
5 transgenic animal neuronal cells where the transgene is APP, and other cells such as those of a stable 293 cell line expressing APP, for example, APP-SW.

#### ***In vivo Assays: Animal Models***

10 Various animal models can be used to analyze beta-secretase activity and /or processing of APP to release A beta, as described above. For example, transgenic animals expressing APP substrate and beta-secretase enzyme can be used to demonstrate inhibitory activity of the compounds of  
15 the invention. Certain transgenic animal models have been described, for example, in U.S. Patent Nos.: 5,877,399; 5,612,486; 5,387,742; 5,720,936; 5,850,003; 5,877,015,, and 5,811,633, and in Ganes et al., 1995, *Nature* 373:523. Preferred are animals that exhibit characteristics  
20 associated with the pathophysiology of AD. Administration of the compound inhibitors of the invention to the transgenic mice described herein provides an alternative method for demonstrating the inhibitory activity of the compounds. Administration of the compounds in a  
25 pharmaceutically effective carrier and via an administrative route that reaches the target tissue in an appropriate therapeutic amount is also preferred.

Inhibition of beta-secretase mediated cleavage of APP at the beta-secretase cleavage site and of A beta release  
30 can be analyzed in these animals by measure of cleavage fragments in the animal's body fluids such as cerebral fluid or tissues. Analysis of brain tissues for A beta deposits or plaques is preferred.

On contacting an APP substrate with a beta-secretase enzyme in the presence of an inhibitory compound of the invention and under conditions sufficient to permit enzymatic mediated cleavage of APP and/or release of A beta from the substrate, the compounds of the invention are effective to reduce beta-secretase-mediated cleavage of APP at the beta-secretase cleavage site and/or effective to reduce released amounts of A beta. Where such contacting is the administration of the inhibitory compounds of the invention to an animal model, for example, as described above, the compounds are effective to reduce A beta deposition in brain tissues of the animal, and to reduce the number and/or size of beta amyloid plaques. Where such administration is to a human subject, the compounds are effective to inhibit or slow the progression of disease characterized by enhanced amounts of A beta, to slow the progression of AD in the, and/or to prevent onset or development of AD in a subject at risk for the disease.

Unless defined otherwise, all scientific and technical terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of skill in the art to which this invention belongs. All patents and publications referred to herein are hereby incorporated by reference for all purposes.

APP, amyloid precursor protein, is defined as any APP polypeptide, including APP variants, mutations, and isoforms, for example, as disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,766,846.

A beta, amyloid beta peptide, is defined as any peptide resulting from beta-secretase mediated cleavage of APP, including peptides of 39, 40, 41, 42, and 43 amino acids, and extending from the beta-secretase cleavage site to amino acids 39, 40, 41, 42, or 43.

Beta-secretase (BACE1, Asp2, Memapsin 2) is an aspartyl protease that mediates cleavage of APP at the amino-terminal edge of A beta. Human beta-secretase is described, for example, in WO00/17369.

5 Pharmaceutically acceptable refers to those properties and/or substances that are acceptable to the subject from a pharmacological/toxicological point of view and to the manufacturing pharmaceutical chemist from a physical/chemical point of view regarding composition, formulation,  
10 stability, subject's acceptance and bioavailability.

A therapeutically effective amount is defined as an amount effective to reduce or lessen at least one symptom of the disease being treated or to reduce or delay onset of one or more clinical markers or symptoms of the disease.

15 It should be noted that, as used in this specification and the appended claims, the singular forms "a," "an," and "the" include plural referents unless the content clearly dictates otherwise. Thus, for example, reference to a composition containing "a compound" includes a mixture of  
20 two or more compounds. It should also be noted that the term "or" is generally employed in its sense including "and/or" unless the content clearly dictates otherwise.

As noted above, depending on whether asymmetric carbon  
25 atoms are present, the compounds of the invention can be present as mixtures of isomers, especially as racemates, or in the form of pure isomers, especially optical antipodes.

Salts of compounds having salt-forming groups are especially acid addition salts, salts with bases or, where  
30 several salt-forming groups are present, can also be mixed salts or internal salts.

Salts are especially the pharmaceutically acceptable or non-toxic salts of compounds of formula I. Compounds of formula I having acid and basic groups can also form



internal salts. For isolation and purification purposes it is also possible to use pharmaceutically unacceptable salts.

5       The present invention may be better understood with reference to the following examples. These examples are intended to be representative of specific embodiments of the invention, and are not intended as limiting the scope of the invention.

10

### BIOLOGY EXAMPLES

#### Example A

#### Enzyme Inhibition Assay

15       The compounds of the invention are analyzed for inhibitory activity by use of the MBP-C125 assay. This assay determines the relative inhibition of beta-secretase cleavage of a model APP substrate, MBP-C125SW, by the compounds assayed as compared with an untreated control. A detailed description of the assay parameters can be found, 20 for example, in U.S. Patent No. 5,942,400. Briefly, the substrate is a fusion peptide formed of maltose binding protein (MBP) and the carboxy terminal 125 amino acids of APP-SW, the Swedish mutation. The beta-secretase enzyme is derived from human brain tissue as described in Sinha et 25 al, 1999, Nature 40:537-540) or recombinantly produced as the full-length enzyme (amino acids 1-501), and can be prepared, for example, from 293 cells expressing the recombinant cDNA, as described in WO00/47618.

30       Inhibition of the enzyme is analyzed, for example, by immunoassay of the enzyme's cleavage products. One exemplary ELISA uses an anti-MBP capture antibody that is deposited on precoated and blocked 96-well high binding plates, followed by incubation with diluted enzyme reaction supernatant, incubation with a specific reporter antibody,

for example, biotinylated anti-SW192 reporter antibody, and further incubation with streptavidin/alkaline phosphatase. In the assay, cleavage of the intact MBP-C125SW fusion protein results in the generation of a truncated amino-terminal fragment, exposing a new SW-192 antibody-positive epitope at the carboxy terminus. Detection is effected by a fluorescent substrate signal on cleavage by the phosphatase. ELISA only detects cleavage following Leu 596 at the substrate's APP-SW 751 mutation site.

#### Specific Assay Procedure:

Compounds are diluted in a 1:1 dilution series to a six-point concentration curve (two wells per concentration) in one 96-plate row per compound tested. Each of the test compounds is prepared in DMSO to make up a 10 millimolar stock solution. The stock solution is serially diluted in DMSO to obtain a final compound concentration of 200 micromolar at the high point of a 6-point dilution curve. Ten (10) microliters of each dilution is added to each of two wells on row C of a corresponding V-bottom plate to which 190 microliters of 52 millimolar NaOAc, 7.9% DMSO, pH 4.5 are pre-added. The NaOAc diluted compound plate is spun down to pellet precipitant and 20 microliters/well is transferred to a corresponding flat-bottom plate to which 30 microliters of ice-cold enzyme-substrate mixture (2.5 microliters MBP-C125SW substrate, 0.03 microliters enzyme and 24.5 microliters ice cold 0.09% TX100 per 30 microliters) is added. The final reaction mixture of 200 micromolar compound at the highest curve point is in 5% DMSO, 20 millimolar NaOAc, 0.06% TX100, at pH 4.5.

Warming the plates to 37 degrees C starts the enzyme reaction. After 90 minutes at 37 degrees C, 200 microliters/well cold specimen diluent is added to stop the reaction and 20 microliters/well was transferred to a

corresponding anti-MBP antibody coated ELISA plate for capture, containing 80 microliters/well specimen diluent. This reaction is incubated overnight at 4 degrees C and the ELISA is developed the next day after a 2 hour incubation with anti-192SW antibody, followed by Streptavidin-AP conjugate and fluorescent substrate. The signal is read on a fluorescent plate reader.

Relative compound inhibition potency is determined by calculating the concentration of compound that showed a fifty percent reduction in detected signal ( $IC_{50}$ ) compared to the enzyme reaction signal in the control wells with no added compound.

#### Example B

#### Cell Free Inhibition Assay Utilizing a Synthetic APP Substrate

A synthetic APP substrate that can be cleaved by beta-secretase and having N-terminal biotin and made fluorescent by the covalent attachment of Oregon green at the Cys residue is used to assay beta-secretase activity in the presence or absence of the inhibitory compounds of the invention. Useful substrates include the following:

Biotin-SEVNLDAEFRC [Oregon green]KK [SEQ ID NO: 1]

Biotin-SEVKMDAEFRC [Oregon green]KK [SEQ ID NO: 2]

Biotin-GLNIKTEEISEISYEVEFRC [Oregon green]KK [SEQ ID NO: 3]

Biotin-ADRGLTTRPGSGLTNIKTEEISEVNLDAEFC [Oregon green]KK [SEQ ID NO: 4]

Biotin-FVNQHLC<sub>ox</sub>GSHLVEALY-LVC<sub>ox</sub>GERGFFYTPKAC [Oregon green]KK [SEQ ID NO: 5]

The enzyme (0.1 nanomolar) and test compounds (0.001 - 100 micromolar) are incubated in pre-blocked, low affinity, black plates (384 well) at 37 degrees for 30 minutes. The reaction is initiated by addition of 150 millimolar

substrate to a final volume of 30 microliter per well. The final assay conditions are: 0.001 - 100 micromolar compound inhibitor; 0.1 molar sodium acetate (pH 4.5); 150 nanomolar substrate; 0.1 nanomolar soluble beta-secretase; 0.001% Tween 20, and 2% DMSO. The assay mixture is incubated for 3 hours at 37 degrees C, and the reaction is terminated by the addition of a saturating concentration of immunopure streptavidin. After incubation with streptavidin at room temperature for 15 minutes, fluorescence polarization is measured, for example, using a LJL Acquest (Ex485 nm/ Em530 nm). The activity of the beta-secretase enzyme is detected by changes in the fluorescence polarization that occur when the substrate is cleaved by the enzyme. Incubation in the presence or absence of compound inhibitor demonstrates specific inhibition of beta-secretase enzymatic cleavage of its synthetic APP substrate.

#### Example C

##### Beta-Secretase Inhibition: P26-P4'SW Assay

Synthetic substrates containing the beta-secretase cleavage site of APP are used to assay beta-secretase activity, using the methods described, for example, in published PCT application WO00/47618. The P26-P4'SW substrate is a peptide of the sequence:

(biotin)CGGADRGLTTRPGSGLTNIKTEEISEVNLD AEF [SEQ ID NO: 6]

The P26-P1 standard has the sequence:

(biotin)CGGADRGLTTRPGSGLTNIKTEEISEVNL [SEQ ID NO: 7].

Briefly, the biotin-coupled synthetic substrates are incubated at a concentration of from about 0 to about 200 micromolar in this assay. When testing inhibitory compounds, a substrate concentration of about 1.0 micromolar is preferred. Test compounds diluted in DMSO are added to the reaction mixture, with a final DMSO

concentration of 5%. Controls also contain a final DMSO concentration of 5%. The concentration of beta secretase enzyme in the reaction is varied, to give product concentrations with the linear range of the ELISA assay, about 125 to 2000 picomolar, after dilution.

The reaction mixture also includes 20 millimolar sodium acetate, pH 4.5, 0.06% Triton X100, and is incubated at 37 degrees C for about 1 to 3 hours. Samples are then diluted in assay buffer (for example, 145.4 nanomolar sodium chloride, 9.51 millimolar sodium phosphate, 7.7 millimolar sodium azide, 0.05% Triton X405, 6g/liter bovine serum albumin, pH 7.4) to quench the reaction, then diluted further for immunoassay of the cleavage products.

Cleavage products can be assayed by ELISA. Diluted samples and standards are incubated in assay plates coated with capture antibody, for example, SW192, for about 24 hours at 4 degrees C. After washing in TTBS buffer (150 millimolar sodium chloride, 25 millimolar Tris, 0.05% Tween 20, pH 7.5), the samples are incubated with streptavidin-AP according to the manufacturer's instructions. After a one hour incubation at room temperature, the samples are washed in TTBS and incubated with fluorescent substrate solution A (31.2 g/liter 2-amino-2-methyl-1-propanol, 30 mg/liter, pH 9.5). Reaction with streptavidin-alkaline phosphate permits detection by fluorescence. Compounds that are effective inhibitors of beta-secretase activity demonstrate reduced cleavage of the substrate as compared to a control.

#### Example D

##### Assays using Synthetic Oligopeptide-Substrates

Synthetic oligopeptides are prepared that incorporate the known cleavage site of beta-secretase, and optionally detectable tags, such as fluorescent or chromogenic moieties. Examples of such peptides, as well as their

production and detection methods are described in U.S. Patent No: 5,942,400, herein incorporated by reference. Cleavage products can be detected using high performance liquid chromatography, or fluorescent or chromogenic  
5 detection methods appropriate to the peptide to be detected, according to methods well known in the art.

By way of example, one such peptide has the sequence (biotin)-SEVNLDAEF [SEQ ID NO: 8], and the cleavage site is between residues 5 and 6. Another preferred substrate  
10 has the sequence ADRGLTTRPGSGLTNIKTEEISEVNLDAEF [SEQ ID NO: 9], and the cleavage site is between residues 26 and 27.

These synthetic APP substrates are incubated in the presence of beta-secretase under conditions sufficient to  
15 result in beta-secretase mediated cleavage of the substrate. Comparison of the cleavage results in the presence of the compound inhibitor to control results provides a measure of the compound's inhibitory activity.

## 20 **Example E**

### **Inhibition of Beta-Secretase Activity - Cellular Assay**

An exemplary assay for the analysis of inhibition of beta-secretase activity utilizes the human embryonic kidney cell line HEKp293 (ATCC Accession No. CRL-1573) transfected  
25 with APP751 containing the naturally occurring double mutation Lys651Met52 to Asn651Leu652 (numbered for APP751), commonly called the Swedish mutation and shown to overproduce A beta (Citron et al., 1992, *Nature* 360:672-674), as described in U.S. Patent No. 5,604,102.

30 The cells are incubated in the presence/absence of the inhibitory compound (diluted in DMSO) at the desired concentration, generally up to 10 micrograms/ml. At the end of the treatment period, conditioned media is analyzed for beta-secretase activity, for example, by analysis of

cleavage fragments. A beta can be analyzed by immunoassay, using specific detection antibodies. The enzymatic activity is measured in the presence and absence of the compound inhibitors to demonstrate specific inhibition of beta-secretase mediated cleavage of APP substrate.

#### Example F

##### Inhibition of Beta-Secretase in Animal Models of AD

Various animal models can be used to screen for inhibition of beta-secretase activity. Examples of animal models useful in the invention include, but are not limited to, mouse, guinea pig, dog, and the like. The animals used can be wild type, transgenic, or knockout models. In addition, mammalian models can express mutations in APP, such as APP695-SW and the like described herein. Examples of transgenic non-human mammalian models are described in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,604,102, 5,912,410 and 5,811,633.

PDAPP mice, prepared as described in Games et al., 1995, Nature 373:523-527 are useful to analyze in vivo suppression of A beta release in the presence of putative inhibitory compounds. As described in U.S. Patent No. 6,191,166, 4 month old PDAPP mice are administered compound formulated in vehicle, such as corn oil. The mice are dosed with compound (1-30 mg/ml; preferably 1-10 mg/ml). After time, e.g., 3-10 hours, the animals are sacrificed, and brains removed for analysis.

Transgenic animals are administered an amount of the compound inhibitor formulated in a carrier suitable for the chosen mode of administration. Control animals are untreated, treated with vehicle, or treated with an inactive compound. Administration can be acute, i.e., single dose or multiple doses in one day, or can be chronic, i.e., dosing is repeated daily for a period of days. Beginning at time 0, brain tissue or cerebral fluid

is obtained from selected animals and analyzed for the presence of APP cleavage peptides, including A beta, for example, by immunoassay using specific antibodies for A beta detection. At the end of the test period, animals are sacrificed and brain tissue or cerebral fluid is analyzed for the presence of A beta and/or beta-amyloid plaques. The tissue is also analyzed for necrosis.

Animals administered the compound inhibitors of the invention are expected to demonstrate reduced A beta in brain tissues or cerebral fluids and reduced beta amyloid plaques in brain tissue, as compared with non-treated controls.

#### Example G

##### Inhibition of A Beta Production in Human Subjects

Subjects suffering from Alzheimer's Disease (AD) demonstrate an increased amount of A beta in the brain. AD subjects and subjects are administered an amount of the compound inhibitor formulated in a carrier suitable for the chosen mode of administration. Administration is repeated daily for the duration of the test period. Beginning on day 0, cognitive and memory tests are performed, for example, once per month.

Subjects administered the compound inhibitors are expected to demonstrate slowing or stabilization of disease progression as analyzed by changes in one or more of the following disease parameters: A beta present in CSF or plasma; brain or hippocampal volume; A beta deposits in the brain; amyloid plaque in the brain; and scores for cognitive and memory function, as compared with control, non-treated subjects.

#### Example H

##### Prevention of A Beta Production in Subjects at Risk for AD



Subjects predisposed or at risk for developing AD are identified either by recognition of a familial inheritance pattern, for example, presence of the Swedish Mutation, and/or by monitoring diagnostic parameters. Subjects  
5 identified as predisposed or at risk for developing AD are administered an amount of the compound inhibitor formulated in a carrier suitable for the chosen mode of administration. Administration is repeated daily for the duration of the test period. Beginning on day 0, cognitive  
10 and memory tests are performed, for example, once per month.

Subjects administered the compound inhibitors are expected to demonstrate slowing or stabilization of disease progression as analyzed by changes in one or more of the  
15 following disease parameters: A beta present in CSF or plasma; brain or hippocampal volume; amyloid plaque in the brain; and scores for cognitive and memory function, as compared with control, non-treated subjects.

20 Some abbreviations that may appear in this application are as follows:

ABBREVIATIONS

<u>Designation</u>	<u>Protecting Group</u>
BOC (Boc)	t-butyloxycarbonyl
25 CBZ (Cbz)	benzyloxycarbonyl (carbobenzoxy)
TBS (TBDMS	t-butyl-dimethylsilyl
	<u>Activating Group</u>
HBT (HOBT or HOBt)	1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate
30 <u>Designation</u>	<u>Coupling Reagent</u>
BOP reagent	benzotriazol-1-yloxytris- (dimethylamino) phosphonium hexafluorophosphate

BOP-Cl                    bis(2-oxo-3-oxazolidinyl)phosphinic  
chloride

EDC                        1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)  
carbodiimide hydrochloride

5

Other

(BOC)<sub>2</sub>O (BOC<sub>2</sub>O)            di-t-butyl dicarbonate

n-Bu<sub>4</sub>N<sup>+</sup>F<sup>-</sup>                    tetrabutyl ammonium fluoride

nBuLi (n-Buli)                n-butyllithium

10 DMF                         dimethylformamide

Et<sub>3</sub>N                          triethylamine

EtOAc                         ethyl acetate

TFA                          trifluoroacetic acid

DMAP                         dimethylaminopyridine

15 DME                         dimethoxyethane

LDA                          lithium diisopropylamide

THF                          tetrahydrofuran

Amino Acid

20 Ile                         L-isoleucine

Val                         L-valine

APP, amyloid precursor protein, is defined as any APP polypeptide, including APP variants, mutations, and  
25 isoforms, for example, as disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,766,846.

A beta, amyloid beta peptide, is defined as any peptide resulting from beta-secretase mediated cleavage of APP, including peptides of 39, 40, 41, 42, and 43 amino  
30 acids, and extending from the beta-secretase cleavage site to amino acids 39, 40, 41, 42, or 43.

Beta-secretase (BACE1, Asp2, Memapsin 2) is an aspartyl protease that mediates cleavage of APP at the

amino-terminal edge of A beta. Human beta-secretase is described, for example, in WO00/17369.

Pharmaceutically-acceptable refers to those properties and/or substances that are acceptable to the patient from a pharmacological/toxicological point of view and to the manufacturing pharmaceutical chemist from a physical/chemical point of view regarding composition, formulation, stability, patient acceptance and bioavailability.

A therapeutically effective amount is defined as an amount effective to maintain, reduce, or lessen at least one symptom of the disease being treated or to reduce or delay onset of one or more clinical markers or symptoms of the disease.

#### Preparation of the Compounds

The reader is directed to published international application WO 93/05026 for methods of preparing the compounds employed in the methods of the invention. The disclosure of this document is incorporated by reference, in its entirety. The synthetic schemes disclosed in WO 93/05026 are intended to represent several possible synthetic routes for preparing a number of the compounds employed in the methods of this invention. These methods serve merely as exemplary synthetic procedures, and are non-limiting. One of skill in the art will be able to modify the reactants and/or reaction conditions for specifically desired compounds. One of skill in the art will also recognize other possible synthetic routes for the compounds described by Formula (I).

#### Example 1

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-thiazole

a) (5S,4S,2R) 6-phenyl-5-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-hydroxy-2-phenylmethyl-(1-oxo)hexyl-amide

5- [1-(t-Boc-amino)-2-phenylethyl]-3-(phenylmethyl)-dihydrofuran-2(3H)-one, 1, was prepared according to the method disclosed by Evans, et al., J. Org. Chem., 50, 4615 (1985).

A solution of benzyl lactone 1 (0.26 g, 0.67 mmol) in methanol (4 mL) was cooled to 0°C. A steady stream of ammonia was bubbled directly into the solution until saturation was reached. The reaction flask was sealed with a rubber septum and allowed to warm to room temperature overnight. The flask was vented with a syringe needle and concentrated in vacuo to give the title compound as a white solid (0.27 g, 99%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.35 (s, 9H), 1.75 (m, 1H), 2.6-3.3 (m, 6H), 3.55-3.8 (m, 3H), 4.75-4.85 (d, 1H), 5.2-5.4 (br s, 1H), 5.6-5.75 (br s, 1H), 7.05-7.35 (m, 10H); IR (film): 3400 (br), 2900-3080, 1650(s), 1525(m), 1170(m) cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS m/e 413 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; TLC: R<sub>f</sub> 0.56 (100% EtOAc); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 528.3, 37.4, 38.8, 40.2, 46.2, 57.7, 70.8, 80.0, 127.1, 127.2, 129.3-130.4, 140.3, 140.9, 158.2, 180.5.

b) (5S,4S,2R) 6-phenyl-5-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-acetoxy-2-phenylmethyl-(1-oxo)hexyl-amide

To a solution of the compound of Example 1(a) (0.27 g, 0.66 mmol) in methylene chloride (10 mL) was added acetic anhydride (0.136 g, 1.33 mmol), triethylamine (0.135 g, 1.33 mmol), and Odimethylaminopyridine (0.008 g, 0.066 mmol). The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The solution was quenched with methanol (2.0 mL) and stirred for 20 min. The reaction mixture was washed with 1.0 N HCl, water, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield, as a white sticky solid, the title compound (0.26g, 86%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.35 (s,

9H), 1.7-1.85 (m, 1H), 1.85- 2.05 (m, 1H), 2.1 (s, 3H),  
2.4-2.55 (br m, 1H), 2.57-2.75 (m, 3H), 2.95-3.1 (m, 2H),  
4.05-4.2 (m, 1H), 4.6-4.75 (d, 1H), 4.85-4.95 (br m, 1H),  
5.05-5.15 (br, 1H), 7.05-7.35 (m, 10H); IR (film,  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ):  
5 3310 (br), 2910-3030, 1685 (s), 1500 (m), 1365 (m), 1235  
(m), 1165 (m); MS m/e 477  $[\text{M}+\text{Na}]^+$ ; TLC  $R_f$  0.6 (2: 1  
EtOAc:hexane) ;  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  21. G, 28.3, 3.50, 38.0,  
39.0, 44.5, 53.5, 73.5, 8a.0, AM, 127.5, 128.4-129.1,  
138.0, 140.0, 156.0, 171.0, 177.0.

10

c) (5S,4S,2R) 6-phenyl-5-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-acetoxy-2-  
phenylmethyl-(1-thiono)hexyl-amide

To a solution of the compound of Example 1(b) (0.25 g,  
0.56 mmol) in benzene (10 mL) was added Lawesson's Reagent  
15 (0.113 g, 0.28 mmol) . Warmed at 80°C for 1.0 h. Diluted  
with ether, washed with 5%  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , and saturated brine,  
dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered and concentrated to a crude white  
solid. This material was chromatographed (silica gel, 40%  
EtOAc:hexane) to yield the title compound as a sticky white  
20 solid (0.142 g, 54%).  $^1\text{H}$  MMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.35 (s, 9H), 1.8-2.05  
(m, 2H), 2.1 (s, 3H), 2.65-2.95 (m, 4H), 3.15-3.3 (m, 1H),  
4.05-4.20 (br m, 1H), 4.65 (d, 1H), 4.8-4.95 (m, 1H), 7.1-  
7.35 (m, 10H); IR (film) 3300 (br), 2910-3010, 1700(s),  
1260, 1130  $\text{cm}^{-1}$  MS m/e 471  $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ ; TLC  $R_f$  0.42 (1:1  
25 hexane:EtOAc, single component;  $^{13}\text{C}$  MMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  22.5,  
28.3,-37.0, 38.0, 42.0, 53.0, 57.5, 61.0, 127.0-129.0,  
138.0, 167. 0

d) 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-acetoxy-5-  
30 phenylpentyl]-5-butyl-thiazole

The compound of Example 1(c) (60.5 mg, 0. 13 mmol) was  
dissolved in  $\text{CHCl}_3$  (10 mL) and to this was added freshly  
prepared 2-bpomohexanal (115.0 mg, 0.65 mmol, 5.0eq.). The  
mixture was refluxed with stirring under Ar for 22.0 h. TLC

(silica gel, 1:1 hexane:EtOAc) indicated no remaining thioamide. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and the brown oily residue was chromatographed (silica gel, 60% hexane:EtOAc). The 5-butyl-thiazole acetate diastereomers  
5 were isolated as a yellow oil (28.6 mg, 40%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) indicated two absorptions for Boc (δ 1.35 and 1.40) and for OAc (δ 2.0 and 2.05) and a peak at δ 7.0 corresponding to the 4-H thiazole; TLC R<sub>f</sub> 0.6 (silica gel, 1:1 hexane:EtOAc).

10 e) 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-butyl-thiazole

The diastereomers of Example 1(d) (28.6 mg, 0.052 mmol) were dissolved in methanol (3.0 mL) and 3 drops of 2.5 N NaOH were added. The mixture was stirred for 2.0 h at room  
15 temperature. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and the residue was chromatographed (silica gel, 2:1 hexane:EtOAc). The title isomeric alcohols were isolated as a white solid (18.0 mg, 68%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.9-1.0 (t, 3H), 1.35 + 1.4 (2s, 9H), 1.55-1.75 (m, 4H), 1.8-2.15 (m, 2H), 2.7-3.2 (m,  
20 6H), 3.35-3.8 (m, 3H), 4.25 (br s, 1H), 4.95 (br m, 1H), 6.9 + 7.05 (2m, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 10H); TLC R<sub>f</sub> 0.56, 0.51 (1:1 hexane:ethyl acetate); MS m/e 509 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; HPLC RT 4.24 min (46%), 5.95 min (54%) (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub>, 4.6 x 250 mm. column, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol, 2.0 mL/min).

25

### Example 2

**Preparation of 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-thiazole**

30 Using the procedure of Example 1, except substituting chloroacetaldehyde for 2-bromohexanal in Example 1(d), the title compound was prepared. <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.35 + 1.4 (2s, 9H), 1.55-1.7 (m, 1H), 1.8-1.95 (m, 1H), 1.95-2.2, (m, 1H), 2.7-2.9 (m., 2H), 2.92-3.15 (m, 2H), 3.45-3.65 (m., 2H),

3.7- 3.85 (m, 1H), 4.85-4.95 (d, 1H), 6.95 + 7.05 (2m., 1H), 7.1- 7.35 (m, 10H), 7.65(d, 1H); TLC R<sub>f</sub> 0.42, 0.36 (1:1 hexane:ethyl acetate); MS m/e 453 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; HPLC RT. 6.52 min (44%), (10.5 min, 56%) (Microsorb® SAN 4.6 x 250 mm, 5 column, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol, 2.0 ml/min).

### Example 3

#### **Preparation of 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-ethyl-thiazole**

10

Using the procedure of Example 1, except substituting 2-bromobutanal for 2-bromohexanal in Example 1(d), the title compound was prepared. <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.25 (t, 3H), 1.35 +1.4 (2s, 9H), 1.75-1.95 (m, 2H), 1.95-2.15 (m, 1H), 2.6-15 3.2 (m, 6H), 3.55-3.85 (m, 3H), 4.8-5.0 (br s, 1H), 6.95 + 7.05 (2m, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 10H); TLC R<sub>f</sub> 0.58, 0.53 (1:1 hexane:ethyl acetate); MS m/e 481 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; HPLC RT. 4.8 min (46%), 7.0 min (54%) (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub>, 4.6 x 250 mm column, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol, 2.0 ml/min).

20

### Example 4

#### **Preparation of 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole**

25 Using the procedure of Example 1, except substituting 2-bromopentanal for 2-bromobutanal in Example 1(d), the title compound was prepared. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (2t, 3H) , 1.4 + 1.45 (2s, 9H), 1.55-1.75 (m, 4H), 1.8-1.95 (m, 1H), 1.95-2.15 (m, 1H), 2.65-3.25 (m, 6H), 3.35-3.8(m, 2H), 4.85-5.0 30 (br m, 1H), 6.95 + 7.05 (2m, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 10H); TLC R<sub>f</sub> 0.55, 0.50 (1:1 hexane:EtOAc); MS m/e 495 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; HPLC RT 3.9 min (46%), 5.6 min (54%) (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub>, 4.6 x 250 mm column, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol, 2.0 ml/min).

Example 5**Preparation of 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-1,3,5-triazole**

- 5 a) N-2-[(5S,4S,2R)-6-phenyl-5-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-acetoxy-2-phenylmethyl-(1-oxo)hexyl]-(N',N'-dimethyl)-formamide

A solution of the compound of Example 1(b) (50 mg, 0.11 mmol) in dimethyl formamide dimethyl acetal (2 mL) was  
10 allowed to stir at 25°C for 2 h. The volatiles were removed in vacuo to leave a slightly yellow oil. The crude material was used without further purification.

- b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-  
15 acetoxy-5-phenylpentyl]-1,3,5-triazole

The compound of Example 5(a) was dissolved in glacial acetic acid (0.5 mL) and hydrazine monohydrate (6.1 mg, 0.12 mmol, 5.9 µL) was added. The mixture was heated at 90°C for 1.5 h. The slightly pink solution was cooled,  
20 diluted with ethyl acetate, and 15% aqueous sodium hydroxide was added until the aqueous layer reached pH 11. The organic layer was dried (magnesium sulfate), filtered, and concentrated to afford a slightly yellow oil. The crude material was purified by chromatography (silica gel, .2:1  
25 ethyl acetate) to provide the title compound as a colorless oil (38.2 mg, 73%).

- c) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-1,3,5-triazole

30 To a stirred solution of the compound of Example 5(b) (28.9 mg, 60 µmol) in methanol (400 µL), 3N aqueous potassium hydroxide (400 µL) was added. After stirring 1 h, the solution was diluted with water (2 mL), saturated with solid sodium chloride and extracted with ethyl acetate (10



mL). The extract was dried (magnesium sulfate), filtered, and the volatiles were removed in vacuo to yield the title compound as a white solid (23.6 mg, 90%). mp 187-188.5°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 250 MHz) δ 1.36 (s, 9 H), 1.84-2.05 (m, 2 H), 2.82 (d, 2 H, J=7.5 Hz), 2.95 (dd, 1 H, J=6.8, 13.5 Hz), 3.09 (dd, 1 H, J=8.6, 13.5 Hz), 3.48 (m, 3H), 4.88 (d, 1 H, J=9.7 Hz), 6.97 (d, 2 H, J=7.5 Hz), 7.12-7.24 (m, 8 H), 7.91 (s, 1 H).

#### 10 Example 6

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-acetylimidazole

a) (2R,4S,5S)-2-benzyl-5-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-t-butyl-  
15 dimethylsiloxy-N-(5-methylisoxazol-4-yl)-6-phenylhexanamide

To a mixture containing (2R,4S,5S)-2-benzyl-5-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-t-butyl-  
dimethylsiloxy-6-phenylhexanoic acid (270 mg, 0.51 mmol), 1-  
20 hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (13.8 mg, 0.10 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (107.9 mg, 0.56 mmol) in DMF was added 4-amino-5-methylisoxazole (55 mg, 0.56 mmol). The resulting yellow solution was allowed to stir at room temperature for 24 h,  
25 then was poured into H<sub>2</sub>O (25 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (25 mL). The organic extract was washed successively with 0.1 N HCl, saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and saturated aqueous NaCl and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was removed in vacuo, and the residue was purified by flash chromatography  
30 (silica gel, 1:4 EtOAc:hexanes) to afford the title compound (185.8 mg, 60%) as a white solid. m.p. 58- 60°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.37 (s, 1H), 7.60 (s, 1H), 7.38-7.19 (m, 8H), 4.75 (d, 1H), 4.12-4.03 (m, 1H), 3.68 (dd, 1H), 3.08 (dd,

1H), 2.82-2.50 (m, 4H), 2.23 (s, 3H), 1.87-1.69 (m, 2H),  
1.25 (s, 9H), 0.95 (s, 9H), 0.12 (s, 3H), 0.10 (s, 1H).

b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-  
5 butyldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-acetylimidazole

A mixture containing the compound of Example 6(a)  
(185.8 mg, 0.31 mmol) and 10% palladium on activated carbon  
(93 mg) in EtOH (3 mL) was stirred under a hydrogen  
atmosphere for 5 h. The mixture was filtered through a pad  
10 of Celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced  
pressure. To the residue in EtOH (2.7 mL) was added 1 M  
NaOH (0.4 mL in EtOH, 0.4 mmol). The resulting mixture was  
heated at reflux overnight, then was partitioned between  
EtOAc and aqueous NH<sub>4</sub>Cl. The organic extract was washed with  
15 saturated aqueous NaCl and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was  
removed under reduced pressure, and the oily residue was  
purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 1:2  
EtOAc:hexanes) to afford the title compound (136.0 mg, 76%)  
as a yellow solid. m.p. 74- 76°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ (tautomers)  
20 7.58 (s, 1H), 7.47 (d, 1H), 7.34-7.07 (m, 18H), 7.00 (d,  
2H), 4.78 (d, 1H), 4.67 (d, 1H), 4.08 (m, 2H), 3.65-3.59  
(m, 1H), 3.49-3.40 (m, 2H), 3.30-3.22 (m, 2H), 3.06 (m,  
1H), 2.86-2.78 (m, 2H), 2.71-2.64 (m, 4H), 2.53 (s, 3H),  
2.36 (s, 3H), 1.84-1.61 (m, 4H), 1.36 (s, 9H), 1.35 (s,  
25 9H), 0.91 (s, 9H), 0.89 (s, 9H), 0.05 (s, 6H), 0.00 (s,  
6H).

c) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-  
hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-acetylimidazole

30 A solution containing the compound of Example 6(b)  
(61.6 mg, 0.10 mmol) in 1 M tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride  
(1.25 mL in THF, 1.25 mmol) was heated at 50°C for 5 h. The  
solution was then poured into EtOAc, washed successively  
with H<sub>2</sub>O (2x) and saturated aqueous NaCl and dried over

MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 2:1 EtOAc:hexanes) to afford the title compound (41.7 mg, 84%) as a white solid. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.60 (br s, 1H), 7.24-7.13 (m, 8H), 6.92 (m, 2H), 4.92 (m, 1H), 3.61 (d, 2H), 3.37 (m, 1H), 3.10-3.02 (m, 1H), 2.91-2.84 (m, 3H), 2.42 (s, 3H), 1.98-1.81 (m, 2H), 1.36 (s, 9H); MS(ES) m/e 478.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; IR(CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3430, 3220, 3000-2860, 1700, 1660, 1500 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

### Example 7

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-2-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-hydroxyethyl)-imidazole

To a solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-acetylimidazole (20.8 mg, 0.044 mmol) in EtOH (0.5 mL) was added excess NaBH<sub>4</sub>. After stirring for 15 min, the reaction was quenched by the addition of aqueous NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract was washed with saturated aqueous NaCl and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was removed in vacuo, and the residue was purified by flash chromatography, eluting with EtOAc to afford the title compound (16.3 mg, 78%) as a white solid. m.p. 85-87°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ (diastereomers) 7.31-7.17 (m, 16H), 6.90-6.88 (m, 4H), 6.66 (s, 2H), 5.01 (d, 2H), 4.84 (m., 2H), 3.62 (m, 4H), 3.24 (m, 2H), 3.01-2.86 (m, 8H), 1.97 (m, 2H), 1.75 (m, 2H), 1.51 (d, 3H), 1.48 (d, 3H), 1.36 (s, 18H); MS(ES) m/e 480.4 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>37</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·1/2 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 66.83; H, 7.84; N, 8.60. Found: C, 68.89; H, 7.61; N, 8.46.

Example 8

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-2-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole

5

a) (2R,4S,5S)-2-benzyl-5-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-t-butylldimethylsiloxy-N-(isoxazol-4-yl)-6-phenylhexanamide

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 6, step (a), except using 4-aminoisoxazole. m.p. 59-61°C; NMR(CDC1<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.91 (s, 1H), 8.34 (br s, 1H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.37-7.18 (m, 8H), 7.02 (d, 2H), 4.75 (d, 1H), 4.11-4.01 (m, 1H), 3.64 (dd, 1H), 3.16 (dd, 1H), 2.81-2.50 (m, 4H), 1.85-1.65 (m, 4H), 1.32 (s, 9H), 0.93 (s, 9H), 0.10 (s, 3H), 0.09 (s, 3H).

15

b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butylldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 6, step (b), except using the compound of Example 8(a). m.p. 70-72°C; NMR(CDC1<sub>3</sub>) δ (tautomers) 10.71 (br s, 1H), 10.47 (br s, 1H), 9.86 (s, 1H), 9.56 (s, 1H), 7.66 (s, 1H), 7.51 (d, 1H), 7.36-6.99 (m, 20H), 4.77 (d, 1H), 4.70 (d, 1H), 4.14-4.04 (m, 2H), 3.60 (t, 1H), 3.49-3.41 (m, 1H), 3.35-3.08 (m, 2H), 2.90-2.62 (m, 6H), 1.83-1.75 (m, 4H), 1.36 (s, 9H), 1.35 (s, 9H), 0.91 (s, 9H), 0.89 (s, 9H), 0.05-0.02 (m, 12H).

25

c) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole

30

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 6, step (c), except using the compound of Example 8(b). m.p. 90-92°C; NMR(CDC1<sub>3</sub>) δ (tautomers) 9.85 (s, 1H), 9.54 (s, 1H), 7.68 (s, 1H), 7.47 (s, 1H), 7.35-7.16 (m, 16H), 6.99-6.91 (m, 4H), 4.86-4.82 (m, 2H), 4.47

(m, 1H), 4.02 (m, 1H), 3.61 (m, 4H), 3.36 (m, 2H), 3.08 (dd, 2H), 2.92-2.83 (m, 4H), 1.89-1.81 (m, 4H), 1.37 (m, 18H); MS(ES) m/e 464.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>33</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·1/2 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 68.62; H, 7.25; N, 8.89. Found: C, 68.63; H, 7.15;

5 N, 8.76.

### Example 9

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-  
10 imidazole

a) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyl-  
dimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-hydroxy-2-  
methylpropyl)imidazole

15 To a solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyl-  
dimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole (138.4 mg, 0.24 mmol) in  
1:1 Et<sub>2</sub>O:THF (0.5 M) was added 3 N isopropylmagnesium bromide  
(0.48 mL in THF, 1.44 mmol). After stirring for 15 min, the  
20 reaction was quenched by the addition of aqueous NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, and  
the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract  
was washed with saturated aqueous NaCl and dried over  
MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was removed in vacuo, and the residue  
was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 1:1  
25 EtOAc:hexanes) to afford the title compound as a white  
solid. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ (diastereomers) 7.28-6.58 (m, 11H),  
4.80-4.54 (m, 1H), 4.29 (m, 1H), 4.02 (m, 1H), 3.64-3.55  
(m, 2H), 3.25 (m, 1H), 3.02 (m, 1H), 2.72-2.54 (m, 3H),  
1.77 (m, 2H), 1.35-1.23 (m, 9H), 1.00-0.81 (m, 15H), 0.10-  
30 0.00 (m, 6H).

b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyl-  
dimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-  
methylpropionyl)imidazole

To a solution of the compound of Example 10(a) (77.6 mg, 0.12 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 mL) was added MnO<sub>2</sub> (775 mg), and the resulting suspension was allowed to stir at room temperature for 5 h. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography, (silica gel, 1:2 EtOAc:hexanes) to afford the title compound (70 mg, 90%) as a white foam. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  (tautomers) 7.60 (s, 1H), 7.48 (d, 1H), 7.34-6.98 (m, 20H), 4.77-4.66 (m, 2H), 4.10-4.03 (m, 2H), 3.64-3.59 (1, 3H), 3.23-3.04 (m, 5H), 2.87-2.60 (m, 6H), 1.84-1.75 (m, 4H), 1.36 (s, 9H), 1.33 (s, 9H), 1.24-1.14 (m, 12H), 0.91 (s, 18H), 0.05-0.00 (m, 12H).

c) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 6, step (c), except using the compound of Example 10(b). m.p. 76-78°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.62 (s, 1H), 7.34-7.04 (m, 8H), 6.91-6.88 (m, 2H), 5.11-4.91 (m, 2H), 3.61-3.52 (2H), 3.43-3.40 (m, 1H), 3.19 (septet, 1H), 3.10-3.02 (1H), 3.07-2.83 (m, 3H), 1.98-1.94 (m, 1H), 1.81-1.75 (m, 1H), 1.35 (s, 9H), 1.21 (d, 3H), 1.19 (d, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 506.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>39</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·1/2 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 70.01; H, 7.83; N, 8.16. Found: C, 69.64; H, 7.77; N, 7.78.

#### Example 10

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-propionylimidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 9, steps (a-c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyltrimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole and ethylmagnesium

bromide in step (a). m.p. 80-82°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.60 (s, 1H), 7.21-6.90 (m, 10H), 5.07-4.87 (m, A), 3.60- 3.40 (m, 3H), 2.83-2.76 (m, 5H), 1.97-1.75 (m, 2H), 1.35-1.19 (m, 12H); MS(ES) m/e 492.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

5

### Example 11

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-imidazole, hydrochloride salt

10

To a solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole (36.9 mg, 73 μmol) in Et<sub>2</sub>O (2.5 mL) was added 1 M HCl (80 μL in Et<sub>2</sub>O, 80 μmol). The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the title compound (39.6 mg, 100%) as a white solid. m.p. 122-124°C; NMR(MeOH-d<sub>4</sub>) δ 8.20 (s, 1H), 7.14-7.09 (m, 8H), 6.95 (d, 2H), 3.62-3.49 (m, 2H), 3.20-3.11 (m, 2H), 3.03 (dd, 1H), 2.91 (dd, 1H), 2.69 (dd, 1H), 2.57 (dd, 1H), 1.97-1.82 (m, 2H), 1.23 (s, 9H), 1.09 (d, 6H); Anal. Calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>40</sub>ClN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>.1/2 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 65.38; H, 7.50; N, 7.62. Found: C, 65.43; H, 7.34; N, 7.75.

20

### Example 12

25 Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 6, step (c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyltrimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)imidazole.

m.p. 82-84°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.26-7.15 (m, 8H), 6.90 (m, 2H),

6.63 (m, 1H), 5.04 (m, 1H), 4.34 (m, 1H), 3.61 (m, 2H),  
3.27 (m, 1H), 2.85 (m, 4H), 1.96 (m, 2H), 1.75 (m, 2H),  
1.35 (s, 9H), 0.99-0.80 (m, 6H); MS(ES) m/e 508.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>;  
Anal. Calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 68.54; H, 8.24; N, 7.99.

5 Found: C, 68.50; H, 7.90; N, 7.55.

### Example 13

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-  
amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-oxobutyl)imidazole

10

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure  
in Example 9, steps (a-c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-  
benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyldimethylsiloxy-5-  
phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole and 1-propylmagnesium,

15 bromide in step (a). m.p. 70-72°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.60 (s,  
1H), 7.20-7.12 (m, 8H), 6.90 (s, 2H), 4.96 (m, 2H), 3.59-  
3.41 (m, 3H), 3.05-2.70 (m, 5H), 1.96-1.74 (m, 4H), 1.35  
(s, 9H), 0.98 (m, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 506.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd  
for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>39</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·1/2-H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 70.01; H, 7.83; N, 8.16. Found: C,  
20 69.68; H, 7.65; N, 8.05.

### Example 14

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-  
amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methyl-1-  
25 oxobutyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure  
in Example 9, steps (a-c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-  
benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyldimethylsiloxy-5-  
30 phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole and 2-butyilmagnesium.

bromide in step (a). m.p. 79-84°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.61 (s,  
1H), 7.26-7.12 (m, 8H), 6.89 (m, 2H), 4.96 (m, 1H), 3.62-  
3.42 (m, 3H), 3.06-2.84 (m, 4H), 1.98-1.71 (m, 3H), 1.52-  
1.15 (m, 14H), 0.90 (t, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 520.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal.



Calcd for  $C_{31}H_{41}N_3O_{4.3/4}H_2O$ : C, 69.83; H, 8.03; N, 7.88.  
Found: C, 70.02; H, 7.67; N, 7.97.

### Example 15

#### 5 Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-carbomethoxyimidazole

a) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyl-  
butyldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-  
10 carbomethoxyimidazole

To a solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyl-  
phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole (10 mg, 17  $\mu$ mol) in MeOH  
(0.3 mL) was added potassium cyanide (5.6 mmol, 87  $\mu$ mol)  
15 and  $MnO_2$  (30.1 mg, 0.35 mmol). The resulting mixture was  
allowed to stir at room temperature for 2 h, at which time  
additional  $MnO_2$  (70 mg, 0.80 mmol) and potassium cyanide (13  
mg, 0.20 mmol) were added. After stirring at room  
temperature for 20 h, the mixture was filtered through a  
20 pad of Celite and the filtrate was concentrated under  
reduced pressure. The colorless oily residue was  
chromatographed (silica gel, 1:2 EtOAc:hexanes) to afford  
the title compound (10.1 mg, 96%) as a colorless oil.  
NMR( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  7.55 (s, 1H), 7.34-7.04 (s, 10H), 4.73 (d, 1H),  
25 4.05-3.98 (m, 1H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.41 (m, 2H), 3.16 (m,  
1H), 2.86 (dd, 1H), 2.67-2.64 (m, 2H), 1.80 (m, 2H), 1.34  
(s, 9H), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.00 (s, 6H).

b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-  
30 hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-carbomethoxyimidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the  
procedure in Example 6, step (c), except using the compound  
of Example 15 (a). m.p. 91-93°C; NMR( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  7.52 (s, 1H),  
7.26-7.16 (m, 8H), 6.96-6.93 (m, 2H), 4.89 (d, 1H), 3.85

(s, 3H), 3.56 (m, 2H), 3.35 (m, 1H), 3.15-3.06 (m, 1H), 2.92-2.83 (m, 3H), 1.85 (m, 2H), 1.36 (s, 9H); MS(ES) m/e 494.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

### 5 Example 16

**Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(N-methylaminocarbonyl)-imidazole**

10 a) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(N-methylaminocarbonyl)imidazole

Into a solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-carbomethoxyimidazole (10.2 mg, 17 μmol) in MeOH (1 mL) at 0°C was bubbled methylamine. After 15 min, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 6 d. The mixture was then concentrated under reduced pressure and used without  
20 further purification. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 7.40 (s, 1H), 7.33-7.14 (m, 8H), 7.01 (d, 2H), 4.78 (d, 1H), 4.11-4.07 (m, 1H), 3.49-3.47 (m, 1H), 3.30 (dd, 1H), 3.03 (m, 1H), 2.97 (d, 3H), 2.88-2.50 (m, 3H), 2.20-1.97 (m, 1H), 1.86-1.70 (m, 2H), 1.35 (s, 9H), 0.90 (s, 9H), 0.00 (s, 6H).

25

b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(N-methylaminocarbonyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the  
30 procedure in Example 6, step (c), except using the compound of Example 16 (a) m.p. 101-103°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.26-6.93 (m, 11H), 4.90 (d, 1H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 3.52 (m, 1H), 3.29 (m, 1H), 3.15-3.06 (m, 1H), 2.99 Q 3H), 2.89-2.81 (m, 3H), 1.80 (m, 2H), 1.36 (s, 9H); MS(ES) m/e 493.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

Example 17

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-3-hydroxy-5-

5 phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

a) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

A solution containing 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole (200.4 mg, 0.40 mmol) in TFA (1 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 5 min, then was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned between EtOAc and 10% aqueous NaOH, and the aqueous phase was extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic extracts were dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated in vacuo to afford the title compound (160.5 mg, 100%) as a white solid. m.p. 80-82°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.61 (s, 1H), 7.26-7.05 (m, 10H), 3.45 (m, 1H), 3.18 (m, 3H), 2.89-2.82 (m, 3H), 2.44 (m, 1H), 2.06 (m, 1H), 1.83 (m, 1H), 1.16 (d, 6H).

b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

A mixture containing 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole (3.7 mg, 9 μmol), carbobenzyloxy-L-valine (2.3 mg, 9 μmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (0.2 mg, 2 μmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.9 mg, 10 μmol) in DMF (0.2 mL) was allowed to stir at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was poured into EtOAc and washed successively with H<sub>2</sub>O, 0.1 N HCl, saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and saturated aqueous NaCl and dried over

MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent was removed in vacuo, and the residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 4% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to afford the title compound (5.5 mg, 94%) as a white solid. m.p. 89-91°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.55 (s, 1H), 7.31-6.68 (m, 16H), 5.44 (d, 1H), 5.18-5.04 (m, 2H), 4.01-3.92 (m, 2H), 3.60 (d, 1H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.18-3.02 (m, 2H), 2.85 (m, 3H), 2.03-1.74 (m, 3H), 1.18 (d, 6H), 0.81 (d, 3H), 0.74 (d, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 639.4 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5.1/4</sub> H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 70.95; H, 7.29; N, 8.71. Found: C, 70.93; H, 7.15; N, 8.63.

### Example 18

Preparation of 2-{(1R,3S,4S)-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-isopropoxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

#### a) (S)-N-(isopropoxycarbonyl)valine

To a solution of (+)-valine (1.76 g, 2.02 mmol) in 2 N NaOH (15.75 M, 31.5 mmol) at 10°C was added isopropyl chloroformate (16.5 mL of 1 M solution in toluene, 16.5 mmol). After stirring for 30 min, the pH was adjusted to pH 10, and the phases were separated. The aqueous phase was washed with Et<sub>2</sub>O. The pH was then adjusted to pH 2 by the addition of 3 N HCl, and the aqueous phase was extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O (3x). The combined organic extracts were dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The title compound was obtained (2.73 g, 89%) and used without further purification. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 5.13 (d, 1H), 4.94-4.89 (m, 1H), 4.32 (dd, 1H), 2.23 (m, 1H), 1.24 (d, 6H), 1.01 (d, 3H), 0.94 (d, 3H).

b) 2-{(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-isopropoxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 17, step (b), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and (S)-N-(isopropoxycarbonyl)valine. m.p. 90-92°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.57 (s, 1H), 7.18-6.91 (m, 10H), 5.23 (m, 1H), 4.85 (m, 1H), 4.02-3.90 (m, 2H), 3.58 (d, 1H), 3.44 (m, 1H), 3.20 (m, 1H), 3.12-3.03 (m, 1H), 2.86 (m, 3H), 1.99-1.74 (m, 3H), 1.21 (d, 12H), 0.81 (d, 3H), 0.75 (d, 3H); MS (CI/NH<sub>3</sub>) m/e 591.5 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5.1/2</sub> H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 68.09; H, 7.90; N, 9.34. Found: C 68.25; H, 7.84; N, 9.18.

#### 15 Example 19

Preparation of 2-{[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-(1-oxo-3-phenylpropyl))-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]}-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

#### 20 a) (S)-N-phenylethylcarbonylvaline

To a solution of (S)-valine (1.76 g, 15 mmol) in 1:1 Et<sub>2</sub>O:2N NaOH (31.5 mL) was added dropwise over 5 min phenylpropanoyl chloride (2.45 M, 16.5 mmol). The temperature was maintained at 10°C during the addition, then was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 30 min. The aqueous phase was adjusted to pH 10 and then extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O (4x8 mL). The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH 2 by the addition of 3 N HCl, and the solid which formed was collected by filtration and dried in vacuo to afford the title compound as a white solid (3.66 g, 98%).

NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.16 (m, 5H), 4.29 (d, 1H), 2.92 (apparent t, 2H), 2.58 (apparent dt, 2H), 2.09 (m, 1H), 0.88 (d, 6H).

b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-(1-oxo-3-phenylpropyl))-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 17, step (b), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and (S)-N-phenylethylcarbonylvaline. m.p. 99-101°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ (diastereomers) 7.64 (s, 1H), 7.59 (s, 1H), 7.18-6.96 (m, 15H), 4.58-4.06 (m, 2H), 3.44-2.44 (m, 11H), 1.82 (m, 3H), 1.23-1.10 (m, 6H), 0.72-0.59 (m, 6H); MS(ES) m/e 637.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>48</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub>.1/2 H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 72.53; H, 7.65; N, 8.68. Found: C, 72.20; H, 7.34; N, 8.56.

#### Example 20

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 17, step (b), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 3-methylbutanoic acid. m.p. 74-76°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.57 (s, 1H), 7.20-6.93 (m, 10H), 4.08-4.05 (m, 1H), 3.52 (m, 2H), 3.18-3.09 (m, 2H), 2.88 (m, 3H), 1.97 (m, 5H), 1.23 (d, 3H), 1.21 (d, 3H), 0.75 (m, 6H); MS(ES) m/e 490.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>39</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.1/2 H<sub>2</sub>O: C 72.26; H, 8.08; N, 8.43. Found: C, 71.88; H, 7.87; N, 8.18.

Example 21

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-acetyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazola

5

To a solution containing 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole (30.0 mg, 74  $\mu$ mol), (S)-N-acetylvaline (13.0 mg, 81  $\mu$ mol) and BOP reagent (36.0 mg, 81  $\mu$ mol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (37  $\mu$ L) was added  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (11.3  $\mu$ L, 81  $\mu$ mol). The resulting solution was allowed to stir at room temperature for 24 h, then was diluted with EtOAc and washed successively with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and 0.1 N HCl. The acidic wash was made basic by the addition of saturated aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  and extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic extracts were washed successively with saturated aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  and saturated aqueous NaCl and dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ . The solvent was removed in vacuo, and the residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 6% MeOH/ $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ) to afford a white solid (30.8 mg, 76%). This material was further purified by preparative HPLC (R.P., 70:30 MeOH: $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) to afford the title compound (15.6 mg, 39%). m.p. 122-24°C; NMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.68 (s, 1H), 7.14-6.89 (m, 10H), 4.11-4.02 (m, 2H), 3.44 (d, 2H), 3.22-3.17 (m, 2H), 2.96-2.82 (m, 3H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 1.90-1.82 (m, 3H), 1.23 (d, 3H), 1.22 (d, 3H), 0.87 (d, 3H), 0.75 (d, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 547.2  $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ ; Anal. Calcd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4 \cdot 3/4 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 68.61; H, 7.83; N, 10.00. Found: C, 68.66; H, 7.59; N, 9.87.

30 Example 22

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-acetyl)-D-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was obtained from the preparative HPLC separation in Example 21 (4.8 mg, 12%). m.p. 123-25°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.62 (s, 1H), 7.20-6.97 (m, 10H), 4.25 (m, 2H), 3.46 (m, 2H), 3.19 (m, 2H), 2.82 (m, 3H), 1.82 (m, 6H), 1.19 (m, 6H), 0.77 (d, 3H), 0.62 (d, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 547.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

### Example 23

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-benzyloxycarbonyl)-L-threonyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 17, step (b), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and N-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-threonine. m.p. 89-91°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.56 (s, 1H), 7.31-7.13 (m, 12H), 6.93 (m, 3H), 5.81 (d, 1H), 5.06 (d, 1H), 5.04 (d, 1H), 4.14-4.04 (m, 3H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.43 (m, 1H), 3.15-3.07 (m, 2H), 2.88-2.79 (m, 3H), 1.84 (m, 2H), 1.16 (d, 3H), 1.15 (d, 3H), 1.07 (d, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 641.4 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>44</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>6</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 67.46; H, 7.04; N, 8.50. Found: C, 67.53; H, 6.98; N, 8.31.

### Example 24

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,3'S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-{1'-[5'-hydroxy-3'-(1-methylethyl)-2'-oxo-1'pyrrolidinyl]}-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 21, except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-



methylpropionyl)imidazole, BOP reagent, triethylamine and (2S)-2-(1-methylethyl)-4-oxobutanoic acid. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexanes), then with (2:1 ethyl acetate:hexanes) to afford the title compound. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.60 (s, 1H), 7.26-7.16 (m, 6H), 7.05 (d, 2H), 6.97 (d, 2H), 5.14 (t, 1H), 4.05 (dd, 1H), 3.80 (m, 1H), 3.44 (m, 1H), 3.23 (m, 2H), 2.99 (m, 1H), 2.80 (dd, 1H), 2.68 (m, 1H), 2.42 (dd, 1H), 2.27-2.23 (m, 2H), 1.84-1.81 (m, 1H), 1.68 (m, 2H), 1.43 (m, 1H), 1.24 (d, 3H), 1.22 (d, 3H), 0.96 (d, 3H), 0.86 (d, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 514.2 (M-H<sub>2</sub>O+H)<sup>+</sup>.

#### Example 25

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,3'R,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-{1'-5'-hydroxy-3'-(1-methylethyl)-2'-oxo-1'pyrrolidinyl}-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was obtained from the chromatographic separation in Example 24. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.69 (s, 1H), 7.23-7.19 (m, 7H), 7.02 (m, 3H), 4.76 (m, 1H), 3.82 (q, 1H), 3.64 (m, 1H), 3.29 (m, 1H), 3.20 (m, 1H), 3.07 (m, 1H), 2.89-2.75 (m, 3H), 2.52 (m, 1H), 2.05-2.00 (m, 4H), 1.72 (m, 2H), 1.23 (d, 3H), 1.22 (d, 3H), 0.94 (d, 3H), 0.87 (d, 3H); MS(ES) m/e 514.2 (M-H<sub>2</sub>O+H)<sup>+</sup>.

#### Example 26

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-benzenesulfonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

To a stirring solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole (10.0 mg, 0.025 mmol) and triethylamine (3.0 mg, 0.03 mmol, 4.2  $\mu$ L) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (0.125 mL) was added benzenesulfonyl

chloride (4.8 mg, 0.027 mmol, 3.5  $\mu$ L). After stirring at room temperature for 1h, the solution was diluted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , washed with saturated aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered, and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexanes) to provide the title compound (4.7 mg, 25%). m.p. 108-110°C; NMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.74 (d, 2H), 7.56 (s, 1H), 7.50 (t, 1H), 7.41 (t, 2H), 7.15 (m, 6H), 7.01 (d, 2H), 6.83 (m, 2H), 5.35 (d, 1H), 3.68 (d, 1H), 3.30 (m, 2H), 3.21 (m, 1H), 2.95 (dd, 1H), 2.81 (m, 2H), 2.55 (dd, 1H), 1.95 (m, 1H), 1.67 (m, 1H), 1.22 (d, 3H), 1.20 (d, 3H); MS(ES) 546.0  $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ .

#### Example 27

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-methanesulfonyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 26, except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole, (2S)-2-methanesulfonylamino-3-methylbutanoyl chloride, and triethylamine for 22h. m.p. 248-250°C; NMR( $\text{CDCl}_3/\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  7.60 (m, 2H), 7.22-7.15 (m, 8H), 7.03 (d, 2H), 4.08 (m, 1H), 3.55 (d, 1H), 3.35-3.30 (m, 4H), 3.06 (dd, 1H), 2.90-2.87 (m, 2H), 2.72 (dd, 1H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 1.82 (m, 3H), 1.20 (d, 3H), 1.18 (d, 3H), 0.88 (d, 3H), 0.73 (d, 3H); MS(ES) 583.2  $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ .

#### Example 28

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-[N-(N'-tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 17, step (b), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-4-amino-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and N-tert-butoxycarbonyl-L-valine. m.p. 101.5-104.5°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.57 (s, 1H), 7.23-7.12 (m, 8H) - 6.90 (d, 2H), 6.63 (bs, 1H), 5.06 (s, 1H), 3.99 (q, 1H), 3.85 (dd, 1H), 3.62 (d, 1H), 3.44 (m, 1H), 3.22 (m, 1H), 3.06 (dd, 1H), 2.89-2.84 (m, 3H), 2.03 (m, 1H), 1.93 (m, 1H), 1.75 (m, 1H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.21 (d, 3H), 1.19 (d, 3H), 0.82 (d, 3H), 0.74 (d, 3H); Anal. Calcd for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>48</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5.3/4</sub> H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 67.99; H, 8.07; N, 9.06. Found: C, 67.73; H, 7.92; N, 9.39.

#### 15 Example 29

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butenoyl)imidazole

20 The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 9, steps (a-c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole and 3-methyl-2-butenylmagnesium bromide in step (a). m.p. 73-75°C.

25 NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.65 (s, 1H), 7.25-7.14 (m, 8H), 6.89 (bs, 2H), 6.12 (m, 1H), 5.26 (d, 1H), 5.21 (d, 1H), 4.95 (d, 1H), 3.63 (m, 2H), 3.38 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 2.85 (m, 3H), 2.05 (m, 1H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 1.35 (s, 6H); MS(ES) 532.4 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>; Anal. Calcd for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4.1/2</sub> H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 71.08; H, 7.83; N, 7.77. Found: C, 71.30; H, 7.75; N, 7.74.

30

Example 30

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethylbutanoyl)-imidazole

5

a) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butanoyl)imidazole.

To a solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butenoyl)imidazole (26 mg, 0.04 mmol) in ethanol (0.4 mL) was added 5% palladium on carbon (6.5 mg). The suspension was stirred vigorously under a balloon of hydrogen for 16h. The suspension was filtered through a bed of celite and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 1:4 ethyl acetate:hexanes) to provide the title compound (13.8 mg, 53%). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.60 (s, 1H), 7.31-7.15 (m, 8H), 6.97 (d, 2H), 4.69 (d, 1H), 4.01 (m, 1H), 3.61 (m, 1H), 3.17 (m, 1H), 2.81 (m, 1H), 2.69 (m, 1H), 1.85 (m, 2H), 1.74 (q, 2H), 1.32 (m, 9H), 1.26 (s, 3H), 1.24 (s, 3H), 0.91 (s, 9H), 0.75 (t, 3H), 0.05 (s, 6H).

25 b) 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethylbutanoyl)-imidazole

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 6, step (c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-t-butyldimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butanoyl)imidazole. m.p. 78-80°C; NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.59 (s, 1H), 7.26-7.15 (m, 8H), 6.89 (bs, 2H), 4.94 (d, 1H), 3.67 (m, 1H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.38 (m, 1H), 3.01 (m, 1H), 2.87 (m,

3H), 1.99 (m, 1H), 1.79 (m, 3H), 1.35 (s, 9H), 1.27 (s, 3H), 1.26 (s, 3H), 0.77 (t, 3H); MS(ES) 534.4 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

### Example 31

5 Preparation of 3-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-6,6-dimethyl-5-hydroxy-pyrrolo-[1,2-c]-imidazol-7-one

10 A solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butenoyl)imidazole (5.0 mg, 9.4 μmol) and sodium periodate (4.4 mg, 0.02 mmol) in 1:1 dioxane:H<sub>2</sub>O (0.34 mL), containing 7.9 μL of a 1% aqueous solution of osmium tetroxide, was allowed to stir at room temperature for 6h.

15 The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed sequentially with water and saturated brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative TLC, developed with 2:1 ethyl acetate:hexanes, to provide the title compound (3.4 mg, 68%). m.p. 88-90°C;

20 NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.52 (s, 1H), 7.26-7.13 (m, 8H), 6.96 (d, 2H), 6.31 (bs, 1H), 4.90 (bs, 1H), 4.79 (d, 1H), 3.51 (m, 1H), 3.40 (m, 1H), 3.31 (m, 1H), 3.14 (m, 1H), 2.99 (m, 2H), 2.83 (dd, 1H), 2.14 (m, 2H), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.17 (s, 3H), 0.70 (s, 3H); MS(ES) 534.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

25

### Example 32

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(cyclopentylcarbonyl)-imidazole

30

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 9, steps (a-c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-tert-butyl dimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole and

cyclopentylmagnesium bromide in step (a). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.58 (s, 1H), 7.20 (m, 9H), 6.91 (m, 2H), 4.97 (d, 1H), 3.61 (m, 2H), 3.41 (m, 2H), 3.06 (m, 1H), 2.89 (m, 1H), 2.86 (d, 2H), 1.80 (m, 11H), 1.37 (s, 9H); MS(ES) 532.4 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

5

### Example 33

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-benzoylimidazole

10

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 9, steps (a-c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-3-tert-butyltrimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole and phenylmagnesium.

15 chloride in step (a). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.89 (d, 2H), 7.62 (t, 1H), 7.58 (s, 1H), 7.52 (t, 2H), 7.20 (m, 8H), 6.93 (d, 2H), 4.97 (d, 1H), 3.64 (m, 2H), 3.53 (m, 1H), 3.12 (m, 1H), 2.93 (m, 1H), 2.86 (d, 2H), 2.02 (d, 1H), 1.87 (d, 1H), 1.40 (s, 9H); MS(ES) 540.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

20

### Example 34

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-ethylbutanoyl)-imidazole

25

The title compound was prepared according to the procedure in Example 9, steps (a-c), except using 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-3-tert-butyltrimethylsiloxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole and 3-pentylmagnesium

30 bromide in step (a). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.60 (s, 1H), 7.22 (m, 9H), 6.90 (d, 2H), 4.94 (d, 1H), 3.67 (d, 1H), 3.62 (m, 1H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.07 (m, 1H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 2.88 (d, 2H), 2.00 (m, 1H), 1.83 (m, 1H), 1.72 (m, 2H), 1.57 (m, 2H), 1.36 (s, 9H), 0.83 (t, 6H); MS(ES) 534.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

Example 35

Preparation of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(E)-1-(hydroxyimino)-2-methylpropyl]imidazole

To a stirring solution of hydroxylamine hydrochloride (25 mg, 0.36 mmol) in ethanol (0.5 mL) at 0°C was added potassium carbonate (25 mg, 0.18 mmol) in water (0.5 M).

10 The solution was stirred for 10 minutes and added to a solution of 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole in ethanol (1 mL) at 55-60°C. After stirring for 24 hours the reaction mixture was  
15 diluted with water and ethyl acetate, extracted with ethyl acetate (2x). The combined extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography on 230-400 mesh (silica gel, 3:2 ethyl acetate:hexanes) to  
20 provide the title compound. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.23 (m, 10H), 6.96 (d, 2H), 5.01 (d, 1H), 3.63 (m, 2H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 2H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 2.87 (d, 2H), 2.00 (m, 1H), 1.80 (m, 1H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.27 (m, 6H); MS(ES) 521.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

25 Example 36

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1I-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-benzoyl-thiazole

a) N-dimethylaminomethylidene-(2R,4S,5S)-2-phenylmethyl-4-acetoxy-5-t-butoxycarbonylamino-6-phenylhexanethioamide.  
30

A solution of the compound of Example 1(c) (134 mg, 0.29 mmol) in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (1 mL) was treated with dimethylformamide dimethylacetal (1.2 equiv) and activated 4A molecular sieves, and stirred for 30 min. The reaction was

filtered, the solvent thoroughly evaporated, and the residue chromatographed (silica gel, 75% EtOAc/hexane), to yield the title compound (133 mg, 89%). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.32 (1H, s), 7.06-7.32 (10H, m), 5.00 (1H, m), 4.58 (1H, d), 3.92 (1H, m), 3.12 (3H, s), 2.96 (3H, s), 2.50-3.34 (4H, m), 2.02 (3H, s), 1.76-2.32 (3H, m), 1.35 (9H, s).

b) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-acetoxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-benzoylthiazole

10 A mixture of the compound of Example 36(a) (111 mg, 0.21 mmol), phenacyl bromide (65 mg, 0.33 mmol), and Et<sub>3</sub>N (45 mg, 0.45 mmol) in MeCN (3 mL) was heated to 90°C for 30 min. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue taken up in EtOAc. The extracts were washed with 0.05N HCl, and  
15 water, dried, and the solvent removed. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel, EtOAc/hexane/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to yield the title compound. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.10 (1H, s), 7.82 (2H, d), 7.48-7.66 (3H, m), 7.00-7.30 (10H, m), 4.92 (1H, m), 4.65 (1H, d), 3.98 (1H, m), 3.48 (1H, m), 2.40-3.12 (2H, m),  
20 2.56-2.75 (2H, m), 1.94-2.34 (2H, m), 2.08 (3H, s), 1.38 (9H, s).

c) (1R,3S,4S)-21-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-benzoyl-thiazole

25 A solution of the compound of Example 36(b) (25 mg) in MeOH (3 mL) was treated with aqueous K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> at ambient temperature for 4 h. The solution was diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O, and filtered. The filtrate was acidified and-extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O. The extracts were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, dried, and the  
30 solvent removed to yield the title compound (13.2 mg, 59%). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.06 (1H, s), 7.80 (2H, dd), 7.62 (1H, m), 7.52 (2H, m), 7.00-7.26 (10H, m), 4.80 (1H, d), 3.76 (1H, m), 3.60 (1H, m), 3.52 (1H, m), 3.05 (2H, m), 2.82 (2H, m),



2.06 (1H, m), 1.82 (1H, m), 1.70 (1H, broad s), 1.40 (9H, s).

### Example 37

#### 5 Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-benzoylthiazole

A solution of the compound of Example 36 (86 mg, 0.14 mmol) in a mixture of THF (8 mL) and Et<sub>2</sub>O (8 mL) was cooled to 0°C and treated with a solution of LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (1 mmol) in THF (1 mL). The reaction was stirred at 0°C for 30 min, and ambient temperature for 40 min, then quenched with cold, dilute HCl. The mixture was extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O, the extracts washed with water, dried, and the solvent removed.

15 The residue was chromatographed (Florisil, EtOAc/hexane/MeOH) to yield the title compound. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>/CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 6.92-7.42 (16H, m), 6.00 (1H, s), 4.90 (1H, d), 3.50-3.70 (2H, m), 3.20-3.30 (1H, m), 2.74-3.08 (4H, m), 2.00 (1H, m), 1.68 (1H, m), 1.40 (9H, s).

20

### Example 38

#### Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-aminocarbonylthiazole

25

A solution of the compound of Example 39(a) (20 mg) in MeOH (4 mL) was cooled to 0°C and saturated with NH<sub>3</sub>. The reaction was closed with a vented cap, allowed to come to ambient temperature and stirred overnight. The solvent was evaporated, the residue taken up in EtOAc, washed with water, dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was crystallized from a mixture of acetone and hexane to yield the title compound (9.3 mg, 46%). NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>/Me<sub>2</sub>CO-D<sub>6</sub>/CD<sub>3</sub>OD)

30

$\delta$  8.12 (1H, s), 7.02-7.28 (10H, m), 5.35 (1H, d), 3.30-3.73 (3H, m), 3.06 (2H, m), 2.78 (2H, m), 1.80-2.10 (2H, m), 1.38 (9H, s).

5 **Example 39**

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-hydroxymethylthiazole

10 a) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-acetoxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-carbomethoxythiazole

Using the procedure of Example 36(b), except substituting methyl bromoacetate for phenacyl bromide, the title compound was prepared. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.28 (1H, s),  
15 6.95-7.30 (10H, m), 4.88 (1H, m), 4.60 (1H, d), 3.96 (1H, m), 3.86 (1H, m), 3.40 (1H, m), 2.88-3.08 (2H, m), 2.55-2.74 (2H, m), 2.08-2.30 (2H, m), 2.06 (3H, s), 1.40 (9H, s).

20 b) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-hydroxymethylthiazole

Using the procedure of Example 37, except substituting the compound of Example 39(a), the title compound was  
25 prepared. NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>/CD<sub>3</sub>OD)  $\delta$  7.42 (1H, s), 7.00-7.28 (10H, m), 5.30 (1H, d), 4.70 (2H, s), 3.50-3.68 (2H, m), 3.41 (1H, d), 2.90-3.08 (2H, m), 2.38 (2H, d), 1.98 (1H, m), 1.86 (1H, m), 1.34 (9H, s).

30 **Example 40**

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-formylthiazole

A solution of the compound of Example 39(b) (65 mg, 0.125 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 mL) and CH<sub>3</sub>CN (3 mL) was treated with excess MnO<sub>2</sub> and stirred at ambient temperature for 22 h. The reaction was filtered, and the solvent evaporated to yield the title compound (59 mg, 91%). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 9.92 (1H, s), 8.26 (1H, s), 7.00-7.28 (10H, m), 4.80 (1H, d), 3.76 (1H, m), 3.58 (1H, m), 3.48 (1H, m), 3.02 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, m), 2.06 (1H, m), 1.88 (1H, m), 1.79 (1H, s, broad), 1.40 (9H, s).

#### Example 41

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-hydroxypropyl)-thiazole

A suspension of ethylmagnesium bromide (2 mmol) in Et<sub>2</sub>O (5 mL) at 23°C was treated with a solution of the compound of Example 40 (50 mg, 0.1 mmol) in Et<sub>2</sub>O (5 mL) and THF (0.5 mL). A dense precipitate formed, and after 5 min the reaction was quenched by the addition of aq. NH<sub>4</sub>Cl. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was chromatographed (Florisil, 49% EtOAc/49% hexane/2% MeOH) to yield the title compound (41 mg, 77%). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 6.92-7.38 (11H, m), 4.92 (1H, d), 4.76 (2H, m), 3.48-3.68 (3H, m), 2.88-3.08 (2H, m), 2.82 (2H, d), 2.02 (1H, m), 1.62-1.92 (4H, m), 1.38 (9H, s), 0.92 (3H, t).

#### Example 42

Preparation of 2-[(1S,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propylthiazole; and 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propylthiazole

The diastereomeric thiazoles of Example 4 were separated by chromatography (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub>, 10 x 250 mm column, 5 mL/min) to yield the following pure enantiomers:

5        2-[(1R or 1S,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole (isomer A). <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (t, 3H) , 1.27 (m, 2H), 1.35 (s, 9H), 1.58-1.7 (m, 2H), 2.02 (t, 1H), 2.7 (t, 2H), 2.85-3.08 (m, 4H), 3.58 (m, 3H), 4.92 (d, 1H), 6.95 (m, 1H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 10H); TLC R<sub>f</sub> 0.55 (1:1 hexane:EtOAc); HPLC RT 3.9 min (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub> 4.6 x 250 mm column, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol, 2.0 mL/min).

15        2-[(1R or 1S,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole (isomer B) <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (t, 3H) , 1.28 (m, 2H) , 1.36 (s, 9H) 1.62 (m, 2H), 1.75-2.15 (2m, 1H), 2.7 (t, 2H), 2.75-3.15 4H), 3.4 (br m, 1H), 3.55 (br m, 1H), 3.75 (br m, 1H), 4.9 (d, 1H), 7.05 (d, 1H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 10H); TLC R<sub>f</sub> 0.50 (1:1 hexane:EtOAc); HPLC RT 5.6 min (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub>, 4.6 x 250 mm column, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol, 2.0 mL/min).

### Example 43

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(3-hydroxypropyl)-  
25    thiazole

a)        (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(2-carboethoxyethyl)-thiazole

30        A solution of triethylphosphonoacetate (224 mg, 1 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (10 mL) was treated with NaH (40mg of a 60% dispersion) at 0°C. 1.7 mL of this solution (.17 mmol) was added at 0°C to a solution of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-

phenylpentyl)-5'-formylthiazole (29 mg, 0.056 mmol) in dimethoxyethane (2 mL). After 1 h, a mixture of water and dilute HCl was added, and the mixture was extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O. The extracts were washed with water, dried, and the solvent removed. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel, 25% EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>), to yield the title compound (35 mg, 53%). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.70 (1H, d), 7.68 (1H, s), 7.10-7.28 (8H, m), 7.00 (2H, m), 6.06 (1H, d), 4.88 (1H, d), 4.26 (2H, q), 4.06 (1H, m), 3.46-3.75 (3H, m), 3.00 (2H, m), 2.82 (2H, m), 2.04 (1H, m), 1.80 (1H, m), 1.40 (9H, s), 1.32 (3H, t).

b) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(3-hydroxypropyl)-thiazole.

A solution of LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (0.6 mmol) in THF (2.5 mL) at 0°C was treated with a solution of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(2-carboethoxyethenyl)-thiazole (35 mg, 0.06 mmol) in THF (2.5 mL). After 1 h at 0°C an additional LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (0.6 mmol) was added, and stirring continued for 20 min at ambient temperature. Water was added, and enough HCl to dissolve all the solids. The mixture was extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, dried, and the solvent removed. The resultant yellow solid was triturated with Et<sub>2</sub>O to yield the title compound (10 mg, 32%). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>/CD<sub>3</sub>OD)  $\delta$  7.10-7.28 (9H, m), 7.00 (2H, m), 5.10 (1H, d), 3.60 (4H, m), 3.42 (1H, m), 3.00 (2H, m), 2.90 (4H, m), 2.00 (1H, m), 1.82 (2H, quintet), 1.68 (1H, m), 1.36 (9H, s).

#### Example 44

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1,2-dihydroxyethyl)-thiazole

a) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-acetoxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-ketocarboethoxy-thiazole.

5 A mixture of the compound of Example 36(b) (111 mg, 0.21 mmol), ethyl bromopyruvate (64 mg, 0.33 mmol), and Et<sub>3</sub>N (45 mg, 0.45 mmol) in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (3 mL) was heated to 90°C for 30 min. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue taken up in EtOAc. The extracts were washed with 0.05N HCl, and  
10 water, dried, and the solvent removed. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel, 30% EtOAc/68% hexane/2% CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>), to yield the title compound (86 mg, 68%).  
NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.65 (1H, s), 6.96-7.28 (10H, m), 4.88 (1H, m), 4.60 (1H, d), 4.42 (2H, q), 3.98 (1H, m), 3.40 (1H, m),  
15 3.02 (2H, m), 2.65 (2H, m), 2.10-2.30 (2H, m), 2.05 (3H, s), 1.45 (3H, t), 1.38 (9H, s).

b) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1,2-  
20 dihydroxyethyl)-thiazole

A solution of the compound of Example 44(a) (86 mg, 0.14 mmol) in a mixture of THF (8 mL) and Et<sub>2</sub>O (8 mL) was cooled to 0°C and treated with a solution of LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (1 mmol) in 1 mL of THF. The reaction was stirred at 0°C for 30 min,  
25 and ambient temperature for 40 min, then quenched with cold, dilute HCl. The mixture was extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O, the extracts washed with water, dried, and the solvent removed. The residue was chromatographed (Florisil, 40% EtOAc/58% hexane/2% MeOH) to yield the title compound (22 mg, 31%).  
30 NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>/CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 7.40 (1H, d), 6.96-7.28 (10H, m), 4.98 (1H, m), 3.46-3.82 (5H, m), 2.88-3.08 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, d), 2.00 (1H, m), 1.75 (1H, m), 1.40 (9H, s).

Example 45

Preparation of (3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-L-alanyl)amino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-propyl-thiazole

5

A solution of the compound of Example 4 (171 mg, 0.34 mmol) in 50% trifluoroacetic acid/methylene chloride (10 mL) was stirred at room temperature under argon for 3.5 h and then concentrated under reduced pressure to give the TFA salt of (3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-amino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-propyl-thiazole as a white solid (176 mg, 100%).

The TFA salt (90.4 mg, 0.178 mmol) was diluted with DMF (10 mL), cooled to 0°C, and diisopropylamine (23 mg, 0.178 mmol), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (37.6 mg, 0.196 mmol), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (28.9 mg, 0.214 mmol), and carbobenzyloxy-L-alanine (43.8 mg, 0.196 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir and warm to room temperature overnight. The DMF was evaporated and the resulting oil was diluted with EtOAc, washed successively with 1.0N HCl, H<sub>2</sub>O, 5% NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration, evaporation of the solvent and flash chromatography (silica gel, 33% hexane/ethyl acetate) yielded the title compound as a white solid (27 mg, 25%).

The diastereomeric mixture was separated by chromatography (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol) to yield the pure enantiomers.

(1R or 1S,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-L-alanyl)amino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-propyl-thiazole (isomer 1). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>), (250 MHz) δ 7.4-7.1 (m, 15H), 6.95 (d, 1H), 6.3 (d, 1H), 5.25 (d, 1H), 5.05 (s, 2H), 4.1 (m, 2H), 3.9 (m, 1H), 3.65 (m, 2H), 3.0 (m, 1H), 2.85 (m, 2H), 2.7 (m, 2H), 1.9-1.6 (m, 5H), 1.35 (m, 1H),

1.2 (d, 3H), 0.9 (t, 3H), 0.75 (d, 3H); TLC  $R_f$  0.35 (2:1 EtOAc:hexane); HPLC RT 10.2 min (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol, 2.0 mL/min); MS m/e 600 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

(1R or 1S,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-L-alanyl)amino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-

propyl-thiazole (isomer 2). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 250 MHz)  $\delta$  7.4-7.1 (m, 15H), 7.05 (d, 1H), 6.3 (d, 1H), 5.25 (d, 1H), 5.05 (s, 2H), 4.15 (m, 1H), 4.05 (m, 1H), 3.6 (m, 1H), 3.45 (m, 1H), 3.0 (m, 1H), 2.8 (m, 2H), 2.7 (m, 2H), 2.0 (m, 2H), 1.8 (m, 1H), 1.55 (m, 2H), 1.25 (m, 4H), 0.9 (t, 3H); TLC  $R_f$  0.32 (2:1 EtOAc:hexane); HPLC RT 15.7 min (Microsorb® SiO<sub>2</sub>, 50:48:2 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexane:isopropanol, 2.0 mL/min); MS m/e 600 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

#### Example 46

Preparation of (3S,4s)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-L-valinyl)amino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-propyl-thiazole

Following the procedure of Example 45, except substituting the benzyloxycarbonyl-L-valine for benzyloxycarbonyl-L-alanine, the title compounds are prepared.

The diastereomeric thiazoles were separated by chromatography (Zorbax® SiO<sub>2</sub>) to yield the pure enantiomers:

(1R or 1S,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-L-valinyl)amino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-

propyl-thiazole (isomer 1). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 250 MHz)  $\delta$  7.4-7.1 (m, 15H), 6.95 (d, 1H), 6.25 (d, 1H), 5.25 (d, 1H), 5.05 (s, 2H), 3.9 (m, 2H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 3.6 (m, 1H), 3.0 (m, 1H), 2.8 (m, 2H), 2.7 (m, 2H), 2.05-1.75 (m, 3H), 1.7-1.45 (m, 4H), 0.95 (t, 3H), 0.85 (d, 3H), 0.75 (d, 3H); TLC  $R_f$  0.55 (2:1 EtOAc:hexane); MS m/e 628 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

(1R or 1S,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-L-valinyl)amino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-



propyl-thiazole (isomer 2). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 250 MHz)  $\delta$  7.4-7.1 (m, 15H), 7.05 (d, 1H), 6.25 (d, 1H), 5.25 (d, 1H), 5.1 (s, 2H), 4.05 (m, 1H), 3.95 (m, 2H), 3.6 (m, 1H), 3.4 (m, 1H), 3.05 (m, 1H), 2.8 (m, 2H), 2.7 (m, 2H), 2.1-1.9 (m, 3H), 1.8-1.5 (m, 4H), 1.0-0.85 (dt, 3H), 0.7 (d, 3H); TLC R<sub>f</sub> 0.50 (2:1 EtOAc:hexane); MS m/e 628 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

#### Example 47

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-oxo-propyl)-thiazole

Using the procedure of Example 40, except substituting the compound of Example 41, the title compound was prepared. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.14 (1H, s), 7.00-7.30 (10H, m), 4.82 (1H, d), 3.46-3.82 (3H, m), 2.98-3.10 (2H, m), 2.76-2.92 (4H, m), 2.06 (1H, m), 1.80 QH, m), 1.38 (9H, s), 1.22 (3H, t).

#### Example 48

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-carboxythiazole

A solution of the compound of Example 39(a) (25 mg, 0.045 mmol) in MeOH (3 mL) was treated with aqueous K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> at ambient temperature for 4 h. The solution was diluted with H<sub>2</sub>O, and filtered. The filtrate was acidified and extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O. The extracts were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, dried, and the solvent removed to yield the title compound (13.2 mg, 59%). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.22 (1H, s), 6.88-7.30 (10H, m), 4.85 (1H, d), 3.72 (1H, m), 3.42-3.65 (3H, m), 3.02 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, m), 2.02 (1H, m), 1.85 (1H, m), 1.30 (9H, s).

Example 49

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)-thiazole

5

Using the procedure of Example 41, except substituting the isopropyl magnesium bromide for ethyl magnesium bromide, the title compound was prepared. NMR(CD<sub>3</sub>OD)  $\delta$  7.32 (1H, d), 6.90-7.15 (10H, m), 6.10 (1H, d), 4.42 (1H, dd), 3.52 (2H, m), 3.32 (1H, m), 2.88 (2H, m), 2.70 (1H, dd), 2.55 (1H, dd), 1.62-1.90 (3H, m), 1.25 (9H, s), 0.86 (3H, d), 0.68 (3H, dd).

Example 50

15 Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(N'-benzyloxycarbonylguanidino)carbonylthiazole

A solution of the compound of Example 48 (70 mg, 0.13 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (4 mL) was treated with N-hydroxybenzotriazole (18 mg, 0.13 mmol), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide methiodide (39 mg, 0.13 mmol), and carbobenzyloxyguanidine (25 mg, 0.13 mmol). After 2 h at ambient temperature, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue taken up in Et<sub>2</sub>O. The extracts were washed with 0.05N HCl, aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, and aq. NaHSO<sub>3</sub>. The extracts were dried, and the solvent evaporated, and the residue chromatographed (silica gel, 74% EtOAc/25% hexane/1% MeOH) to yield the title compound (58 mg). NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.88 (1H, broad s), 8.42 (1H, broad s), 8.16 (1H, s), 7.35 (5H, s), 7.10-7.30 (8H, m), 6.96 (2H, dd), 5.20 (2H, s), 4.84 (1H, d), 4.26 (1H, broad s), 3.63 (2H, m), 3.52 (1H, d), 3.06 (1H, dd), 2.92 (1H, dd), 2.80 (2H, d), 2.02 (1H, m), 1.72 (1H, m), 1.62 (1H, broad s), 1.38 (9H, s)

Example 51

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-

5 aminocarbonylpropyl)-thiazole

a) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-acetoxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-chloropropyl)-thiazole

10 A solution of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-acetoxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-hydroxypropyl)-thiazole (49 mg, 0.089 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) at 0°C was treated with Et<sub>3</sub>N (9 mg, 0.089 mmol), and thionyl chloride (11 mg, 0.089 mmol). After 30 min at 0°C, water  
15 was added, and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with cold, dilute HCl, and water, and the extracts were dried and the solvent removed. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel, 5% EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to yield the title compound (20 mg, 41%) NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.52 (1H, d),  
20 7.08-7.30 (8H, m), 6.98 (2H, m), 5.00 (1H, t), 4.90 (1H, m), 4.58 (1H, dd), 3.98 (1H, m), 3.34 (1H, m), 3.04 (1H, dd), 2.90 (1H, dd), 2.62 (2H, q), 2.10 (4H, m), 2.00 (3H, s), 1.38 (9H, s), 1.00 (3H, q).

25 b) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-acetoxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-carbomethoxy-propyl)-thiazole

A solution of the compound of Example 51(a) (135 mg, 0.24 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) and MeOH (2 mL) was treated with  
30 Pd(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (14 mg, 0.0625 mmol), Ph<sub>3</sub>P (33 mg, 0.125 mmol), and Et<sub>3</sub>N (48 mg, 0.48 mmol). Carbon monoxide was bubbled through the reaction for 30 min, the vessel was sealed, and heated overnight at 45°C. The mixture was cooled, diluted with water, acidified with dilute HCl, and extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O.

The extracts were washed with water, dried, and the solvent removed. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel 10% EtOAc/CHCl<sub>3</sub>) to yield the title compound (45 mg, 32%).

NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.75 (1H, m), 7.45 (1H, d), 7.04-7.40 (7H, m),  
5 6.96 (2H, m), 4.90 (1H, m), 4.56 (1H, d), 3.96 (1H, m),  
3.69 (3H, s), 3.32 (1H, m), 3.02 (1H, dd), 2.90 (1H, dd),  
2.62 (2H, m), 2.00 (3H, s), 1.68-2.10 (4H, m), 1.32 (9H,  
s), 0.88 (3H, m).

Also isolated from this reaction and chromatography  
10 was (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-acetoxy-4-t-  
butoxycarbonyl-amino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-methoxypropyl)-  
thiazole. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.50 (1H, s), 7.08-7.30 (8H, m),  
6.94 (2H, d), 4.90 (1H, m), 4.58 (1H, d), 4.20 (1H, t),  
3.96 (1H, m), 3.35 (1H, m), 3.18 (1.5H, s), 3.12 (1.5H, s),  
15 3.00 (1H, dd), 2.90 (1H, dd), 2.69 (1H, dd), 2.58 (1H, dd),  
2.18 (1H, m), 2.10 (1H, m), 2.02 (3H, s), 1.85 (1H, m),  
1.60 (1H, m), 1.32 (9H, s), 0.84 (3H, q).

c) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-  
20 butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-carboxypropyl)-  
thiazole

Following the procedure of Example 48, the compound of  
Example 51(b) was hydrolyzed to yield the title compound.

25 d) (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-  
butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-  
carbomethoxypropyl)-thiazole

A solution of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-  
4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-  
30 carboxypropyl)-thiazole in Et<sub>2</sub>O was treated with an excess  
of an ethereal solution of CH<sub>2</sub>N<sub>2</sub>. The solvent was evaporated  
to yield the title compound. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.42 (1H, s),  
7.12-7.28 (8H, m), 6.90 (2H, d), 4.90 (1H, d), 3.72 (3H,  
s), 3.58 (4H, m), 3.02 (1H, dd), 2.90 (1H, dd), 2.85 (2H,

m), 2.00 (2H, m), 1.62-1.80 (2H, m), 1.32 (9H, s), 0.88 (3H, m).

### Example 52

5 Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-methoxypropyl)-thiazole

(1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-acetoxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-methoxypropyl)-thiazole, isolated from the reaction of Example 51(b), was hydrolyzed according to the procedure of Example 48 to yield the title compound. NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.42 (1H, s), 7.10-7.28 (8H, m), 6.92 (2H, d), 4.90 (1H, d), 4.20 (1H, t), 15 3.58 (3H, m), 3.20 (1.5H, s), 3.14 (1.5H, s), 3.02 (1H, dd), 2.90 (1H, dd), 2.85 (2H, m), 2.04 (1H, m), 1.86 (1H, m), 1.68 (1H, dd), 1.60 (1H, dd), 1.35 (9H, s), 0.86 (1.5H, t), 0.82 (1.5H, t).

### 20 Example 53

Preparation of (1R,3S,4S)-2'-(1-phenylmethyl-3-hydroxy-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-5-phenylpentyl)-5'-(1-aminocarbonylpropyl)-thiazole

25 A solution of the compound of Example 51(b) (30 mg, 0.05 mmol) in MeOH (5 M) was cooled in an ice bath, and saturated with NH<sub>3</sub> gas. The reaction vessel was sealed with a vented cap, allowed to come to ambient temperature, and stirred 16 h. The solvents were evaporated, and the residue taken up 30 in EtOAc. The extract was washed with water and dilute HCl, dried, and the solvents evaporated. Trituration of the residue with Et<sub>2</sub>O gave the title compound (7.2 mg, 27%). NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.42 (1H, s), 7.10-7.30 (8H, m), 6.92 (2H, m), 5.60 (1H, br s), 5.50 (1H, br s), 5.42 (1H, broad s), 4.92

(1H, d), 3.68 (1H, m), 3.42-3.60 (3H, m), 3.00 (1H, dd),  
2.90 (1H, dd), 2.80 (2H, d), 1.92-2.14 (2H, m), 1.58-1.80  
(2H, m), 1.32 (9H, s), 0.90 (3H, m).

#### 5 Example 54

##### Parenteral Dosage Unit Composition

A suitable dosage form for intravenous administration is prepared by dissolving the compound of Example 1 (25 mg) in  
10 diethyl sulfoxide or formamide (1 mL), diluting to 20 mL with a 70% propylene glycol/30% ethanol solution, and filtering the resultant solution under sterile conditions. This solution is also suitable for use in other methods of administration, such as addition to a bottle or bag for IV  
15 drip infusion.

#### Example 55

##### Oral Dosage Unit Composition

20 A capsule for oral administration is prepared by mixing and milling 200 mg of the compound with 450 mg of lactose and 30 mg of magnesium stearate. The resulting powder is screened and filled into a hard gelatin capsule.

25

It should be noted that, as used in this specification and the appended claims, the singular forms "a," "an," and "the" include plural referents unless the content clearly dictates otherwise. Thus, for example, reference to a  
30 composition containing "a compound" includes a mixture of two or more compounds. It should also be noted that the term "or" is generally employed in its sense including "and/or" unless the content clearly dictates otherwise.

Unless defined otherwise, all scientific and technical terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of skill in the art to which this invention belongs.

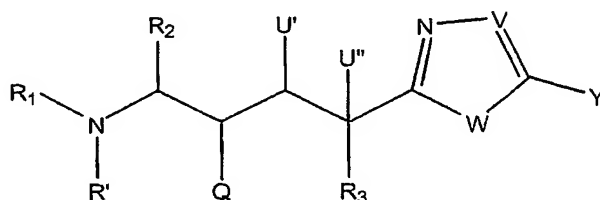
5 All patents and publications referred to herein are hereby incorporated by reference for all purposes.

The invention has been described with reference to various specific and preferred embodiments and techniques. However, it should be understood that many variations and  
10 modifications may be made while remaining within the spirit and scope of the invention.

## We claim:

1. A method of treating or preventing Alzheimer's disease in a subject in need of such treatment comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof:

## Formula (I)



10 wherein R<sub>1</sub> is A-(B)<sub>t</sub>;

A is R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>OC(=E), R<sub>6</sub>NR<sub>17</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>SC(=E), R<sub>6</sub>NR'<sub>17</sub>C(=NR'), R<sub>6</sub>OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>NHCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>, or R<sub>6</sub>SO;

B is an amino acid, SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO or OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO;

15 E is O or S;

R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>3</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl or T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, optionally substituted by R<sub>10</sub>;

T is Ar, Het, or C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl;

20 R<sub>5</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>, and R<sub>7</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>3-11</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CH(T)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, optionally substituted by one or two halogen, SR', OR', NR'<sub>2</sub>, C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

Q is OH or NH<sub>2</sub>;

25 U' and U'' are H or OH;

V is N or C-Y';

W is NR<sub>11</sub> or S;

Y and Y' are H, halogen, CF<sub>3</sub>, Ar, NO<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, CO-Z or (CR<sub>8</sub>R<sub>9</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R', or together Y and Y' form a five or six-membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by R<sub>8</sub> or R<sub>9</sub>;



Z is H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, OH, NR'R<sub>5</sub>, OR<sub>5</sub> or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

R<sub>8</sub> is independently H, OH, N'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'-NR'<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>Ar or (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>Het;

5 R<sub>9</sub> is independently H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, CO-Z, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>Ar or (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>Het, or , taken together, R<sub>8</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are =O, =N-OR' or =N-NR'<sub>2</sub>;

R' is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, Ar-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

10 R<sub>10</sub> is -X'-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>, X''[((CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O)<sub>s</sub>]R<sub>14</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>X''[((CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O)<sub>s</sub>]R<sub>14</sub>, or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicycloC<sub>7-11</sub>cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

15 R<sub>11</sub> is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, Ar-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, or together with Y forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by R<sub>8</sub> or R<sub>9</sub>;

20 R<sub>12</sub> and R<sub>13</sub> are i) C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, optionally substituted by OH, C<sub>1-3</sub>alkoxy, or N(R')<sub>2</sub>, ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from NR'', O, S, SO, SO<sub>2</sub>, said heterocycle optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl or N(R'')<sub>2</sub>;

R'' is H or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

25 R<sub>14</sub> is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C(=O)R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)U'''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>O]<sub>n</sub>R', P(=O)(OM)<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)NR<sub>15</sub>R<sub>16</sub>, where M is a mono or divalent metal ion, and U''' is NR' or O;

30 R<sub>15</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo, C<sub>1-3</sub>alkoxy, CONR'<sub>2</sub>, NR'<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R', SO<sub>2</sub>NR'<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>2</sub>, NR'COR', NR'SO<sub>2</sub>R', X''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O]<sub>s</sub>R' or CH<sub>2</sub>X''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O]<sub>x</sub>R';

R<sub>16</sub> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or together with R<sub>15</sub> forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

$X'$  is  $CH_2$ , O, S, or NH;

$X''$  is  $CH_2$ , NR, O, S, SO, or  $SO_2$ ;

m is 2-5;

5 n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

T is 0 or 1.

10 2. A method of treating Alzheimer's disease in a subject in need of such treatment comprising administering to the subject a compound disclosed in claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15 3. A method of treating Alzheimer's disease by modulating the activity of beta amyloid converting enzyme, comprising administering to a subject in need of such treatment a compound disclosed in claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

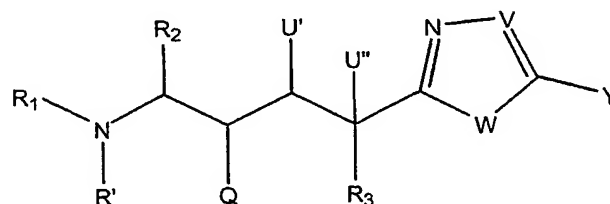
20

4. The method according to claim 1, further comprising the administration of a P-gp inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25 5. A method of treating a subject who has, or in preventing a subject from getting, a disease or condition selected from the group consisting of Alzheimer's disease, for helping prevent or delay the onset of Alzheimer's disease, for treating subjects with mild cognitive  
30 impairment (MCI) and preventing or delaying the onset of Alzheimer's disease in those who would progress from MCI to AD, for treating Down's syndrome, for treating humans who have Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis of the Dutch-Type, for treating cerebral amyloid angiopathy and

preventing its potential consequences, i.e. single and recurrent lobar hemorrhages, for treating other degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative origin, dementia associated with  
 5 Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia associated with progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, or diffuse Lewy body type of Alzheimer's disease and who is in need of such treatment which includes  
 10 administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof:

**Formula (I)**



15 wherein R<sub>1</sub> is A-(B)<sub>t</sub>;

A is R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>OC(=E), R<sub>6</sub>NR<sub>17</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>SC(=E), R<sub>17</sub>NR'C(=NR'), R<sub>6</sub>OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>NHCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>, or R<sub>6</sub>SO;

20 B is an amino acid, SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO or OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO;

E is O or S;

R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>3</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl or T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, optionally substituted by R<sub>10</sub>;

25 T is Ar, Het, or C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl;

R<sub>5</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>, and R<sub>7</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>3-11</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CH(T)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, optionally substituted by one or two halogen, SR', OR', NR'<sub>2</sub>, C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

30 Q is OH or NH<sub>2</sub>;

U' and U'' are H or OH;

V is N or C-Y';

W is NR<sub>11</sub> or S;

Y and Y' are H, halogen, CF<sub>3</sub>, Ar, NO<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, CO-Z or (CR<sub>8</sub>R<sub>9</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R', or together Y and Y' form a five or six-membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by R<sub>8</sub> or R<sub>9</sub>;

Z is H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, OH, NR'R<sub>5</sub>, OR<sub>5</sub> or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

R<sub>8</sub> is independently H, OH, N'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'-NR'<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>Ar or (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>Het;

R<sub>9</sub> is independently H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, CO-Z, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>Ar or (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>Het, or, taken together, R<sub>8</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are =O, =N-OR' or =N-NR'<sub>2</sub>;

R' is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, Ar-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sub>10</sub> is -X'-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>, X''[((CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O)<sub>s</sub>]R<sub>14</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>X''[((CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O)<sub>s</sub>]R<sub>14</sub>, or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicycloC<sub>7-11</sub>cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sub>11</sub> is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, Ar-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, or together with Y forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by R<sub>8</sub> or R<sub>9</sub>;

R<sub>12</sub> and R<sub>13</sub> are i) C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, optionally substituted by OH, C<sub>1-3</sub>alkoxy, or N(R')<sub>2</sub>, ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from NR'', O, S, SO, SO<sub>2</sub>, said heterocycle optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl or N(R'')<sub>2</sub>;

R'' is H or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sub>14</sub> is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C(=O)R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)U'''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>O]<sub>n</sub>R', P(=O)(OM)<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)NR<sub>15</sub>R<sub>16</sub>, where M is a mono or divalent metal ion, and U''' is NR' or O;

$R_{15}$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy,  $CONR'_2$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $CO_2R'$ ,  $SO_2NR'_2$ ,  $CH_2NR_2$ ,  $NR'COR'$ ,  $NR'SO_2R'$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$  or  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$ ;

5  $R_{16}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or together with  $R_{15}$  forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

$X'$  is  $CH_2$ , O, S, or NH;

10  $X''$  is  $CH_2$ , NR, O, S, SO, or  $SO_2$ ;

m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

15 T is 0 or 1.

6. The method according to any of claims 1-5 wherein the compound of formula (I) is selected from the group consisting of:

20 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-butyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-thiazole;

25 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-ethyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-1,3,5-triazole;

30 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-acetylimidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-hydroxyethyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-formylimidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-propionylimidazole;

5 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)imidazole;

10 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-oxobutyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methyl-1-oxobutyl)imidazole;

15 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-carbomethoxyimidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(N-methylaminocarbonyl)-imidazole;

20 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-L-valyllamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-isopropoxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

25 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-(1-oxo-3-phenylpropyl))-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

30 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-acetyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-acetyl)-D-valyllamino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

5 2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-benzyloxycarbonyl)-L-threonyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,3'S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-{1'-[5'-hydroxy-3'-(1-methylethyl)-2'-oxo-1'pyrrolidinyl]}-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

10 2-((1R,3S,3'R,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-{1'-[5'-hydroxy-3'-(1-methylethyl)-2'-oxo-1'pyrrolidinyl]}-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-benzenesulfonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

15 2-1[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[N-(N'-methanesulfonyl)-L-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-[N-(N'-tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-valyl]amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

20 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butenoyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethylbutanoyl)imidazole;

3-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-6,6-dimethyl-5-hydroxy-pyrrolo-[1,2-c]-imidazol-7-one;

30 2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(cyclopentylcarbonyl)imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-benzoylimidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-ethylbutanoyl)-imidazole;

2-[(1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(E)-1-(hydroxyimino)-2-

5 methylpropyl)]imidazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-benzoyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-( $\alpha$ -hydroxybenzyl)-thiazole;

10 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-aminocarbonyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-hydroxymethyl-thiazole;

15 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-formyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1-hydroxypropyl)-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

20 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(3-hydroxypropyl)-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1,2-dihydroxyethyl)-thiazole;

25 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-alanyl)amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-valyl)amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propionyl-thiazole;

30 2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-carboxy-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(2-methyl-1-hydroxy-propyl)-thiazole;



2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(*N'*-benzyloxycarbonyl-guanidino)carbonyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1-methoxycarbonyl)propyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1-methoxy)propyl-thiazole; and

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-(1-aminocarbonyl)propyl-thiazole;

2-[(3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-5-propyl-thiazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(cyclopentylcarbonyl)-imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(E)-1-(hydroxyiminoy-2-methylpropyl)]imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethylbutanoyl)-imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2,2-dimethyl-3-butenoyl)imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[*N*-(*N'*-acetyl)-D-valyl]amino-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4-[*N*-(3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)]amino-5-phenylpentyl)-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(2-methylpropionyl)-imidazole;

2-((1R,3S,4S)-1-benzyl-4-*t*-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl]-4(5)-(1-oxobutyl)imidazole;

2 - [(1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) -propionylimidazole;

2 - [(1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) -acetylimidazole;

5 2 - [(3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl] -5-propyl-thiazole;

2 - [(3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4-(benzyloxycarbonyl-valyl) amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl] -5-propyl-thiazole;

10 2 - { (1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' -methanesulfonyl) -L-valyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl) -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) -imidazole;

2 - [(1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) - (2-ethylbutanoyl) -imidazole;

15 2 - [(1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) - (2-methyl-1-oxobutyl) imidazole;

2 - [(1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-4- [N- (benzyloxycarbonyl) -L-valyl] amino-3-hydroxy-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

20 2 - [(1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' -isopropoxycarbonyl) -L-valyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

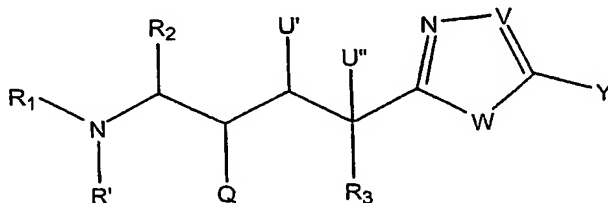
25 2 - [(1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' - (1-oxo-3-phenylpropyl) ) -L-valyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl] -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole;

2 - ((1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' -acetyl) -L-valyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl) -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole; and

30 2 - ((1R,3S,4S) -1-benzyl-3-hydroxy-4- [N- (N' -benzyloxycarbonyl) -L-threonyl] amino-5-phenylpentyl) -4 (5) - (2-methylpropionyl) imidazole.

7. A method of treating or preventing Alzheimer's disease in a subject in need of such treatment comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a composition comprising one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and a compound of Formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof:

Formula (I)



wherein R<sub>1</sub> is A-(B)<sub>t</sub>;

10 A is R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>OC(=E), R<sub>6</sub>NR;C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>SC(=E), R<sub>17</sub>NR'C(=NR'), R<sub>6</sub>OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>NHCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>, or R<sub>6</sub>SO;

B is an amino acid, SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO or OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO;

E is O or S;

15 R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>3</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl or T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, optionally substituted by R<sub>10</sub>;

T is Ar, Het, or C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl;

20 R<sub>5</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>, and R<sub>7</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>3-11</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CH(T)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, optionally substituted by one or two halogen, SR', OR' NR'<sub>2</sub>, C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

Q is OH or NH<sub>2</sub>;

U' and U'' are H or OH;

25 V is N or C-Y';

W is NR<sub>11</sub> or S;

30 Y and Y' are H, halogen, CF<sub>3</sub>, Ar, NO<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, CO-Z or (CR<sub>8</sub>R<sub>9</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R', or together Y and Y' form a five or six-membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by R<sub>8</sub> or R<sub>9</sub>;

Z is H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, OH, NR'R<sub>5</sub>, OR<sub>5</sub> or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

R<sub>8</sub> is independently H, OH, N'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'-NR'<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>Ar or (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>Het;

5 R<sub>9</sub> is independently H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, CO-Z, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>Ar or (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>Het, or, taken together, R<sub>8</sub> and R<sub>9</sub> are =O, =N-OR' or =N-NR'<sub>2</sub>;

R' is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, Ar-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

10 R<sub>10</sub> is -X'-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>, X''[((CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O)<sub>s</sub>]R<sub>14</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>X''[((CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O)<sub>s</sub>]R<sub>14</sub>, or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicycloC<sub>7-11</sub>cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

15 R<sub>11</sub> is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, Ar-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, or together with Y forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by R<sub>8</sub> or R<sub>9</sub>;

20 R<sub>12</sub> and R<sub>13</sub> are i) C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, optionally substituted by OH, C<sub>1-3</sub>alkoxy, or N(R')<sub>2</sub>, ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from NR'', O, S, SO, SO<sub>2</sub>, said heterocycle optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl or N(R'')<sub>2</sub>;

R'' is H or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

25 R<sub>14</sub> is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C(=O)R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)U'''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>O]<sub>n</sub>R', P(=O)(OM)<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)NR<sub>15</sub>R<sub>16</sub>, where M is a mono or divalent metal ion, and U''' is NR' or O;

30 R<sub>15</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo, C<sub>1-3</sub>alkoxy, CONR'<sub>2</sub>, NR'<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R', SO<sub>2</sub>NR'<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>2</sub>, NR'COR', NR'SO<sub>2</sub>R', X''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O]<sub>s</sub>R' or CH<sub>2</sub>X''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O]<sub>x</sub>R';

R<sub>16</sub> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or together with R<sub>15</sub> forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

$X'$  is  $CH_2$ ,  $O$ ,  $S$ , or  $NH$ ;

$X''$  is  $CH_2$ ,  $NR$ ,  $O$ ,  $S$ ,  $SO$ , or  $SO_2$ ;

$m$  is 2-5;

5  $n$  is 1-6;

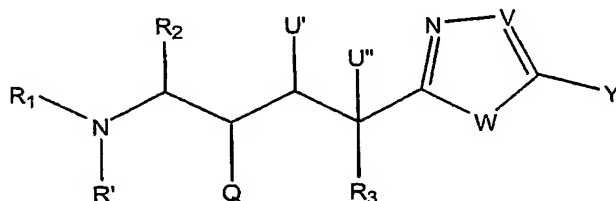
$p$  and  $q$  are 0-2;

$s$  is 1-6 and  $r$  is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

$T$  is 0 or 1.

10 8. Use of a compound of formula (I) in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment or prevention of conditions selected from the group consisting of Alzheimer's disease, mild cognitive impairment (MCI) Down's syndrome, Hereditary Cerebral Hemorrhage with Amyloidosis  
15 of the Dutch-Type, cerebral amyloid angiopathy, degenerative dementias, including dementias of mixed vascular and degenerative origin, dementia associated with Parkinson's disease, frontotemporal dementias with parkinsonism (FTDP), dementia associated with progressive  
20 supranuclear palsy, dementia associated with cortical basal degeneration, or diffuse Lewy body type of Alzheimer's disease:

**Formula (I)**



25 wherein  $R_1$  is  $A-(B)_t$ ;

$A$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6C(=E)$ ,  $R_6OC(=E)$ ,  $R_6NR;C(=E)$ ,  $R_6SC(=E)$ ,  $R_{17}NR'C(=NR')$ ,  $R_6OCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6NHCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SO_2$ , or  $R_6SO$ ;

$B$  is an amino acid,  $SCH(R_7)CO$  or  $OCH(R_7)CO$ ;

30  $E$  is  $O$  or  $S$ ;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl or T- $C_{2-6}$ alkynyl, optionally substituted by  $R_{10}$ ;

T is Ar, Het, or  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl;

5  $R_5$ ,  $R_6$ , and  $R_7$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{3-11}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $(CH_2)_nCH(T)(CH_2)_n$ , optionally substituted by one or two halogen,  $SR'$ ,  $OR'$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ , or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

Q is OH or  $NH_2$ ;

10 U' and U'' are H or OH;

V is N or C-Y';

W is  $NR_{11}$  or S;

Y and Y' are H, halogen,  $CF_3$ , Ar,  $NO_2$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, CO-Z or  $(CR_8R_9)_n-R'$ , or together Y and Y' form a five or six-membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at  
15 any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

Z is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, OH,  $NR'R_5$ ,  $OR_5$  or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

$R_8$  is independently H, OH,  $N'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  
20  $NR'-NR'_2$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ ;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl, CO-Z,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ , or, taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are =O, =N-OR' or =N- $NR'_2$ ;

R' is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

25  $R_{10}$  is  $-X'-(CH_2)_qNR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $X''[((CH_2)_rO)_s]R_{14}$ ,  $CH_2X''[((CH_2)_rO)_s]R_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with Y  
30 forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or  $N(R')_2$ , ii) the same or different and

joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from NR'', O, S, SO, SO<sub>2</sub>, said heterocycle optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted

5 with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl or N(R'')<sub>2</sub>;

R'' is H or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sub>14</sub> is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C(=O)R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)U'''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>O]<sub>n</sub>R', P(=O)(OM)<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)NR<sub>15</sub>R<sub>16</sub>, where M is a mono or divalent metal ion, and U''' is NR' or O;

10 R<sub>15</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo, C<sub>1-3</sub>alkoxy, CONR'<sub>2</sub>, NR'<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R', SO<sub>2</sub>NR'<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>2</sub>, NR'COR', NR'SO<sub>2</sub>R', X''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O]<sub>s</sub>R' or CH<sub>2</sub>X''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O]<sub>x</sub>R';

15 R<sub>16</sub> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or together with R<sub>15</sub> forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

R<sub>17</sub> is R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>CO or R<sub>6</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>;

X' is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, S, or NH;

X'' is CH<sub>2</sub>, NR, O, S, SO, or SO<sub>2</sub>;

20 m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

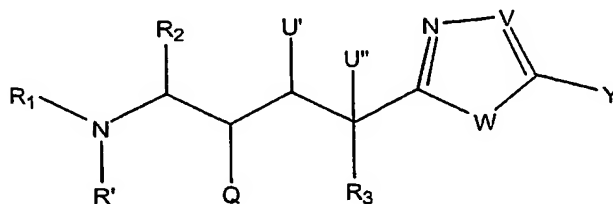
s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

T is 0 or 1.

25

9. A method for inhibiting beta-secretase activity, comprising contacting an effective amount for inhibition of a compound of formula (I):

**Formula (I)**



30

wherein R<sub>1</sub> is A-(B)<sub>t</sub>;

A is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6C(=E)$ ,  $R_6OC(=E)$ ,  $R_6NR;C(=E)$ ,  $R_6SC(=E)$ ,  $R_{17}NR'C(=NR')$ ,  $R_6OCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6NHCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SO_2$ , or  $R_6SO$ ;

B is an amino acid,  $SCH(R_7)CO$  or  $OCH(R_7)CO$ ;

5 E is O or S;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl or T- $C_{2-6}$ alkynyl, optionally substituted by  $R_{10}$ ;

T is Ar, Het, or  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl;

10  $R_5$ ,  $R_6$ , and  $R_7$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{3-11}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $(CH_2)_nCH(T)(CH_2)_n$ , optionally substituted by one or two halogen,  $SR'$ ,  $OR'$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ , or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

Q is OH or  $NH_2$ ;

15  $U'$  and  $U''$  are H or OH;

V is N or C- $Y'$ ;

W is  $NR_{11}$  or S;

Y and  $Y'$  are H, halogen,  $CF_3$ , Ar,  $NO_2$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, CO-Z or  $(CR_8R_9)_n-R'$ , or together Y and  $Y'$  form a five or six-  
20 membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

Z is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, OH,  $NR'R_5$ ,  $OR_5$  or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

$R_8$  is independently H, OH,  $N'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  
25  $NR'-NR'_2$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ ;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl, CO-Z,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ , or, taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are =O, =N- $OR'$  or =N- $NR'_2$ ;

$R'$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

30  $R_{10}$  is  $-X'-(CH_2)_qNR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ ,  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;



$R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with Y forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

5  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or  $N(R')_2$ , ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from  $NR''$ , O, S, SO,  $SO_2$ , said heterocycle optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted  
10 with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or  $N(R'')_2$ ;

$R''$  is H or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{14}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C(=O)R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)U'''[(CH_2)_mO]_nR'$ ,  $P(=O)(OM)_2$ ,  $CO_2R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)NR_{15}R_{16}$ , where M is a mono or  
15 divalent metal ion, and  $U'''$  is  $NR'$  or O;

$R_{15}$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy,  $CONR'_2$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $CO_2R'$ ,  $SO_2NR'_2$ ,  $CH_2NR_2$ ,  $NR'COR'$ ,  $NR'SO_2R'$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$  or  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$ ;

20  $R_{16}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or together with  $R_{15}$  forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

$X'$  is  $CH_2$ , O, S, or NH;

25  $X''$  is  $CH_2$ , NR, O, S, SO, or  $SO_2$ ;

m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

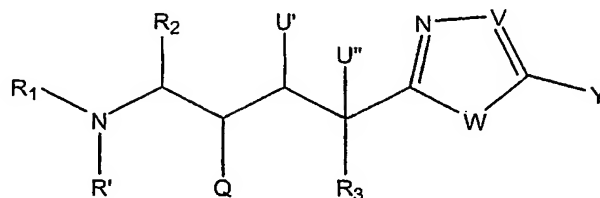
s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

30 T is 0 or 1.

10. A method for inhibiting cleavage of an amyloid precursor protein (APP) isotype at a site in the APP isotype that is susceptible to cleavage, comprising

contacting said APP isotype with an effective cleavage inhibitory amount of a compound of formula (I):

Formula (I)



5 wherein R<sub>1</sub> is A-(B)<sub>t</sub>;

A is R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>OC(=E), R<sub>6</sub>NR<sub>7</sub>C(=E), R<sub>6</sub>SC(=E), R<sub>17</sub>NR'C(=NR'), R<sub>6</sub>OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>NHCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO, R<sub>6</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>, or R<sub>6</sub>SO;

B is an amino acid, SCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO or OCH(R<sub>7</sub>)CO;

10 E is O or S;

R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>3</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkenyl, or T-C<sub>2-6</sub>alkynyl, optionally substituted by R<sub>10</sub>;

T is Ar, Het, or C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl;

15 R<sub>5</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>, and R<sub>7</sub> are each independently H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>3-11</sub>cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, T-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CH(T)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, optionally substituted by one or two halogen, SR', OR', NR'<sub>2</sub>, C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

Q is OH or NH<sub>2</sub>;

20 U' and U'' are H or OH;

V is N or C-Y';

W is NR<sub>11</sub> or S;

25 Y and Y' are H, halogen, CF<sub>3</sub>, Ar, NO<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, CO-Z or (CR<sub>8</sub>R<sub>9</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R', or together Y and Y' form a five or six-membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by R<sub>8</sub> or R<sub>9</sub>;

Z is H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, OH, NR'R<sub>5</sub>, OR<sub>5</sub> or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

30 R<sub>8</sub> is independently H, OH, N'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'C(=NR')NR'R<sub>17</sub>, NR'-NR'<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>Ar or (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>Het;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl, CO-Z,  $(CH_2)_p$ Ar or  $(CH_2)_q$ Het, or , taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are =O, =N-OR' or =N-NR'<sub>2</sub>;

R' is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

5  $R_{10}$  is -X' -  $(CH_2)_q$ NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>, X" [  $((CH_2)_rO)_s$  ]R<sub>14</sub>,  $CH_2X'' [ ((CH_2)_rO)_s ]R_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

10  $R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with Y forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or N(R')<sub>2</sub>, ii) the same or different and  
15 joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from NR'', O, S; SO, SO<sub>2</sub>, said heterocycle optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or N(R'')<sub>2</sub>;

20 R'' is H or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{14}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, C(=O)R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)U''' [  $(CH_2)_mO$  ]<sub>n</sub>R', P(=O)(OM)<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)NR<sub>15</sub>R<sub>16</sub>, where M is a mono or divalent metal ion, and U''' is NR' or O;

$R_{15}$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one  
25 or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, CONR'<sub>2</sub>, NR'<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R', SO<sub>2</sub>NR'<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>2</sub>, NR'COR', NR'SO<sub>2</sub>R', X" [  $(CH_2)_rO$  ]<sub>s</sub>R' or  $CH_2X'' [ (CH_2)_rO ]_xR'$ ;

$R_{16}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or together with  $R_{15}$  forms a 5-7  
30 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>CO or R<sub>6</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>;

X' is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, S, or NH;

X'' is CH<sub>2</sub>, NR, O, S, SO, or SO<sub>2</sub>;

m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

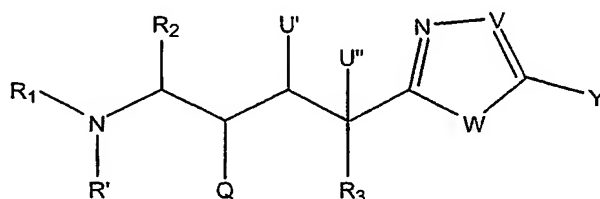
s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

T is 0 or 1.

5

11. A method for inhibiting production of amyloid beta peptide (A beta) in a cell, comprising administering to said cell an effective inhibitory amount of a compound of formula (I):

10 Formula (I)



wherein  $R_1$  is  $A-(B)_t$ ;

A is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6C(=E)$ ,  $R_6OC(=E)$ ,  $R_6NR;C(=E)$ ,  $R_6SC(=E)$ ,  $R_{17}NR'C(=NR')$ ,  $R_6OCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6NHCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SO_2$ ,  
15 or  $R_6SO$ ;

B is an amino acid,  $SCH(R_7)CO$  or  $OCH(R_7)CO$ ;

E is O or S;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl  
20 or T- $C_{2-6}$ alkynyl, optionally substituted by  $R_{10}$ ;

T is Ar, Het, or  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl;

$R_5$ ,  $R_6$ , and  $R_7$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{3-11}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $(CH_2)_nCH(T)(CH_2)_n$ ,  
optionally substituted by one or two halogen,  $SR'$ ,  $OR'$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  
25  $C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ , or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

Q is OH or  $NH_2$ ;

U' and U'' are H or OH;

V is N or C-Y';

W is  $NR_{11}$  or S;

30 Y and Y' are H, halogen,  $CF_3$ , Ar,  $NO_2$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, CO-Z or  $(CR_8R_9)_n-R'$ , or together Y and Y' form a five or six-

membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$Z$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, OH,  $NR'R_5$ ,  $OR_5$  or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

5  $R_8$  is independently H, OH,  $N'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'-NR'_2$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ ;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $CO-Z$ ,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ , or, taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are  $=O$ ,  $=N-OR'$  or  $=N-NR'_2$ ;

10  $R'$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $Ar-C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{10}$  is  $-X'-(CH_2)_qNR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $X''[((CH_2)_rO)_s]R_{14}$ ,  $CH_2X''[((CH_2)_rO)_s]R_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

15  $R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $Ar-C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with  $Y$  forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by  
20 OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or  $N(R')_2$ , ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from  $NR''$ , O, S, SO,  $SO_2$ , said heterocycle optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted  
25 with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or  $N(R'')_2$ ;

$R''$  is H or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{14}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C(=O)R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)U'''[(CH_2)_mO]_nR'$ ,  $P(=O)(OM)_2$ ,  $CO_2R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)NR_{15}R_{16}$ , where  $M$  is a mono or divalent metal ion, and  $U'''$  is  $NR'$  or O;

30  $R_{15}$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or  $Ar$ , optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy,  $CONR'_2$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $CO_2R'$ ,  $SO_2NR'_2$ ,  $CH_2NR_2$ ,  $NR'COR'$ ,  $NR'SO_2R'$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$  or  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$ ;

$R_{16}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or together with  $R_{15}$  forms a 5-7membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

5  $X'$  is  $CH_2$ , O, S, or NH;

$X''$  is  $CH_2$ , NR, O, S, SO, or  $SO_2$ ;

m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

10 s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

T is 0 or 1.

12. The method of claim 11, wherein the cell is an animal cell.

15

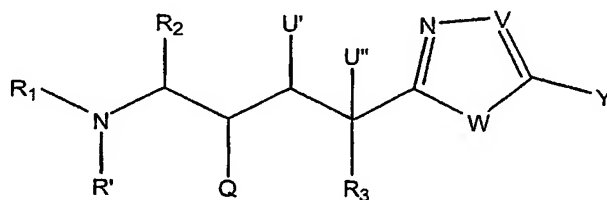
13. The method of claim 12, wherein the animal cell is a mammalian cell.

14. The method of claim 13, wherein the mammalian cell is human.

20

15. A composition comprising beta-secretase complexed with a compound of formula (I):

**Formula (I)**



25

wherein  $R_1$  is  $A-(B)_t$ ;

A is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6C(=E)$ ,  $R_6OC(=E)$ ,  $R_6NR;C(=E)$ ,  $R_6SC(=E)$ ,  $R_{17}NR'C(=NR')$ ,  $R_6OCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6NHCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SO_2$ , or  $R_6SO$ ;

30

B is an amino acid,  $SCH(R_7)CO$  or  $OCH(R_7)CO$ ;

E is O or S;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl or T- $C_{2-6}$ alkynyl, optionally substituted by  $R_{10}$ ;

T is Ar, Het, or  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl;

5  $R_5$ ,  $R_6$ , and  $R_7$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{3-11}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $(CH_2)_nCH(T)(CH_2)_n$ , optionally substituted by one or two halogen,  $SR'$ ,  $OR'$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ , or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

Q is OH or  $NH_2$ ;

10 U' and U'' are H or OH;

V is N or C- $Y'$ ;

W is  $NR_{11}$  or S;

Y and  $Y'$  are H, halogen,  $CF_3$ , Ar,  $NO_2$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, CO-Z or  $(CR_8R_9)_n-R'$ , or together Y and  $Y'$  form a five or six-  
15 membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

Z is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, OH,  $NR'R_5$ ,  $OR_5$  or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

$R_8$  is independently H, OH,  $N'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  
20  $NR'-NR'_2$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ ;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl, CO-Z,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ , or, taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are =O, =N- $OR'$  or =N- $NR'_2$ ;

$R'$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

25  $R_{10}$  is  $-X'-(CH_2)_qNR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ ,  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with Y  
30 forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or  $N(R')_2$ , ii) the same or different and

joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from NR'', O, S, SO, SO<sub>2</sub>, said heterocycle optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted with C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl or N(R'')<sub>2</sub>;

R'' is H or C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl;

R<sub>14</sub> is H, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, C(=O)R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)U'''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>O]<sub>n</sub>R', P(=O)(OM)<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, C(=O)NR<sub>15</sub>R<sub>16</sub>, where M is a mono or divalent metal ion, and U''' is NR' or O;

R<sub>15</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo, C<sub>1-3</sub>alkoxy, CONR'<sub>2</sub>, NR'<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R', SO<sub>2</sub>NR'<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>2</sub>, NR'COR', NR'SO<sub>2</sub>R', X''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O]<sub>s</sub>R' or CH<sub>2</sub>X''[(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>O]<sub>x</sub>R';

R<sub>16</sub> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or together with R<sub>15</sub> forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

R<sub>17</sub> is R<sub>6</sub>, R<sub>6</sub>CO or R<sub>6</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>;

X' is CH<sub>2</sub>, O, S, or NH;

X'' is CH<sub>2</sub>, NR, O, S, SO, or SO<sub>2</sub>;

m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

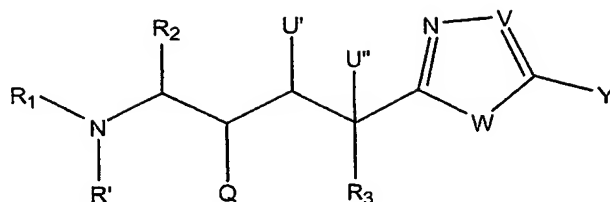
T is 0 or 1.

16. A method for producing a beta-secretase complex comprising the composition of claim 15.

17. A method for inhibiting the production of beta-amyloid plaque in an animal, comprising administering to said animal an effective inhibiting amount of a compound of formula (I):

**Formula (I)**





wherein  $R_1$  is  $A-(B)_t$ ;

A is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6C(=E)$ ,  $R_6OC(=E)$ ,  $R_6NR;C(=E)$ ,  $R_6SC(=E)$ ,  
 $R_{17}NR'C(=NR')$ ,  $R_6OCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6NHCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SO_2$ ,  
 5 or  $R_6SO$ ;

B is an amino acid,  $SCH(R_7)CO$  or  $OCH(R_7)CO$ ;

E is O or S;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl  
 10 or T- $C_{2-6}$ alkynyl, optionally substituted by  $R_{10}$ ;

T is Ar, Het, or  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl;

$R_5$ ,  $R_6$ , and  $R_7$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{3-11}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $(CH_2)_nCH(T)(CH_2)_n$ ,  
 optionally substituted by one or two halogen,  $SR'$ ,  $OR'$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  
 15  $C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ , or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

Q is OH or  $NH_2$ ;

$U'$  and  $U''$  are H or OH;

V is N or C- $Y'$ ;

W is  $NR_{11}$  or S;

20 Y and  $Y'$  are H, halogen,  $CF_3$ , Ar,  $NO_2$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, CO-Z  
 or  $(CR_8R_9)_n-R'$ , or together Y and  $Y'$  form a five or six-  
 membered alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at  
 any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

Z is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, OH,  $NR'_5$ ,  $OR_5$  or an amino acid  
 25 with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

$R_8$  is independently H, OH,  $N'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  
 $NR'-NR'_2$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ ;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl, CO-Z,  
 $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ , or, taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are =O,  
 30 =N- $OR'$  or =N- $NR'_2$ ;

$R'$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{10}$  is  $-X'-(CH_2)_qNR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ ,  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidinyl, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

5  $R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, Ar- $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with Y forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by  
10 OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or  $N(R')_2$ , ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from  $NR''$ , O, S, SO,  $SO_2$ , said heterocycle optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted  
15 with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or  $N(R'')_2$ ;

$R''$  is H or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{14}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C(=O)R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)U'''[(CH_2)_mO]_nR'$ ,  $P(=O)(OM)_2$ ,  $CO_2R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)NR_{15}R_{16}$ , where M is a mono or divalent metal ion, and  $U'''$  is  $NR'$  or O;

20  $R_{15}$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or Ar, optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy,  $CONR'_2$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $CO_2R'$ ,  $SO_2NR'_2$ ,  $CH_2NR_2$ ,  $NR'COR'$ ,  $NR'SO_2R'$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$  or  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$ ;

$R_{16}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or together with  $R_{15}$  forms a 5-  
25 7membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

$X'$  is  $CH_2$ , O, S, or NH;

$X''$  is  $CH_2$ , NR, O, S, SO, or  $SO_2$ ;

30 m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

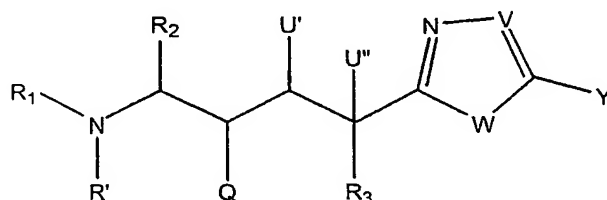
s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

T is 0 or 1.

18. The method of claim 17, wherein said animal is a human.

19. A method for treating or preventing a disease characterized by beta-amyloid deposits on or in the brain, comprising administering to a subject in need of such treatment or prevention an effective therapeutic amount of a compound of formula (I):

Formula (I)



wherein  $R_1$  is  $A-(B)_t$ ;

A is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6C(=E)$ ,  $R_6OC(=E)$ ,  $R_6NR;C(=E)$ ,  $R_6SC(=E)$ ,  $R_{17}NR'C(=NR')$ ,  $R_6OCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6NHCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SCH(R_7)CO$ ,  $R_6SO_2$ , or  $R_6SO$ ;

B is an amino acid,  $SCH(R_7)CO$  or  $OCH(R_7)CO$ ;

E is O or S;

$R_2$  and  $R_3$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl or T- $C_{2-6}$ alkynyl, optionally substituted by  $R_{10}$ ;

T is Ar, Het, or  $C_{3-7}$ cycloalkyl;

$R_5$ ,  $R_6$ , and  $R_7$  are each independently H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{3-11}$ cycloalkyl, Ar, Het, T- $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, T- $(CH_2)_nCH(T)(CH_2)_n$ , optionally substituted by one or two halogen,  $SR'$ ,  $OR'$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ , or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

Q is OH or  $NH_2$ ;

$U'$  and  $U''$  are H or OH;

V is N or C- $Y'$ ;

W is  $NR_{11}$  or S;

Y and  $Y'$  are H, halogen,  $CF_3$ , Ar,  $NO_2$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, CO-Z or  $(CR_8R_9)_n-R'$ , or together Y and  $Y'$  form a five or six-

membered, alkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$Z$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, OH,  $NR'R_5$ ,  $OR_5$  or an amino acid with a blocked or unblocked carboxy terminus;

5  $R_8$  is independently H, OH,  $N'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'C(=NR')NR'R_{17}$ ,  $NR'-NR'_2$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ ;

$R_9$  is independently H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$ alkenyl,  $CO-Z$ ,  $(CH_2)_pAr$  or  $(CH_2)_qHet$ , or, taken together,  $R_8$  and  $R_9$  are  $=O$ ,  $=N-OR'$  or  $=N-NR'_2$ ;

10  $R'$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $Ar-C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{10}$  is  $-X'-(CH_2)_qNR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ ,  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR_{14}$ , or benzofuryl, indolyl, azacycloalkyl, azabicyclo $C_{7-11}$ cycloalkyl, or benzopiperidiny, optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

15  $R_{11}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $Ar-C_{1-4}$ alkyl, or together with  $Y$  forms a five or six-membered cycloalkyl, aryl, or heterocyclic ring substituted at any stable position by  $R_8$  or  $R_9$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are i)  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, optionally substituted by  
20 OH,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy, or  $N(R')_2$ , ii) the same or different and joined together to form a 5-7 member heterocycle containing up to two additional heteroatoms selected from  $NR''$ , O, S, SO,  $SO_2$ , said heterocycle optionally substituted with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, iii) aromatic heterocycle, optionally substituted  
25 with  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl or  $N(R'')_2$ ;

$R''$  is H or  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl;

$R_{14}$  is H,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl,  $C(=O)R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)U'''[(CH_2)_mO]_nR'$ ,  $P(=O)(OM)_2$ ,  $CO_2R_{15}$ ,  $C(=O)NR_{15}R_{16}$ , where  $M$  is a mono or divalent metal ion, and  $U'''$  is  $NR'$  or O;

30  $R_{15}$  is  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or  $Ar$ , optionally substituted with one or more hydroxy, carboxy, halo,  $C_{1-3}$ alkoxy,  $CONR'_2$ ,  $NR'_2$ ,  $CO_2R'$ ,  $SO_2NR'_2$ ,  $CH_2NR_2$ ,  $NR'COR'$ ,  $NR'SO_2R'$ ,  $X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$  or  $CH_2X''[(CH_2)_rO]_sR'$ ;

$R_{16}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or together with  $R_{15}$  forms a 5-7 membered heterocycle or a 6 membered heterocycle containing a heteroatom selected from N, O, and S;

$R_{17}$  is  $R_6$ ,  $R_6CO$  or  $R_6SO_2$ ;

5  $X'$  is  $CH_2$ , O, S, or NH;

$X''$  is  $CH_2$ , NR, O, S, SO, or  $SO_2$ ;

m is 2-5;

n is 1-6;

p and q are 0-2;

10 s is 1-6 and r is 1-3 within each repeating units; and

T is 0 or 1.

20. A method of treatment according to any of claims 1-5, further comprising administration of one or more  
15 therapeutic agents selected from the group consisting of an antioxidant, an anti-inflammatory, a gamma secretase inhibitor, a neurotrophic agent, an acetyl cholinesterase inhibitor, a statin, P-gp inhibitors, an A beta peptide, and an anti-A beta peptide.

20

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/US 02/40038

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 A61K31/427 A61K31/4196 A61K31/4174 A61K31/4178 A61P25/28

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 A61K A61P

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, CHEM ABS Data, WPI Data, EMBASE

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 01 70672 A (ELAN PHARM INC) 27 September 2001 (2001-09-27) page 3, line 18 -page 20, line 22 page 124, line 11 -page 126, line 4 ---	1-20
A	WO 98 22430 A (THORSETT EUGENE D ;AUDIA JAMES E (US); JOHN VARGHESE (US); LATIMER) 28 May 1998 (1998-05-28) page 5, line 17 -page 8, line 10 ---	1-20
A	US 5 552 426 A (MONN JAMES A ET AL) 3 September 1996 (1996-09-03) column 1, line 60 -column 3, line 5 --- -/--	1-20

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents:

\*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

\*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

\*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

\*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

\*P\* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

\*T\* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

\*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

\*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

\*&amp;\* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

26 March 2003

Date of mailing of the international search report

02/04/2003

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Usuelli, A

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Internat. Application No.  
PCT/US 40038

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	HONG ET AL: "Structure of the protease domain of memapsin 2 (.beta.-secretase) complexed with inhibitor" SCIENCE, AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR THE ADVANCEMENT OF SCIENCE,, US, vol. 290, no. 5489, 6 October 2000 (2000-10-06), pages 150-153, XP002161207 ISSN: 0036-8075 figure 2	15
P,A	WO 02 02505 A (ELAN PHARM INC) 10 January 2002 (2002-01-10) page 5, line 20 -page 26, line 11 page 70, line 28 -page 72, line 6	1-20

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US 02/40038

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Although claims 1-7, 9-14, 17-20 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

### Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.



## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

 International Publication No  
 PCT/US 7/40038

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 0170672	A	27-09-2001	AU 5295801 A	03-10-2001
			EP 1265849 A2	18-12-2002
			WO 0170672 A2	27-09-2001
			US 2002022623 A1	21-02-2002
			US 2002019403 A1	14-02-2002
			US 2003013881 A1	16-01-2003
WO 9822430	A	28-05-1998	AU 739035 B2	04-10-2001
			AU 5249898 A	10-06-1998
			AU 729133 B2	25-01-2001
			AU 5267798 A	10-06-1998
			BR 9713351 A	25-01-2000
			BR 9713404 A	25-01-2000
			CN 1237960 A	08-12-1999
			CN 1238760 A	15-12-1999
			EP 0951464 A1	27-10-1999
			EP 0946499 A1	06-10-1999
			HU 0000492 A2	28-05-2000
			JP 2001505204 T	17-04-2001
			JP 2001504498 T	03-04-2001
			NO 992381 A	21-07-1999
			NO 992463 A	19-07-1999
			NZ 334950 A	30-03-2001
			NZ 335280 A	25-05-2001
			PL 334516 A1	28-02-2000
			TR 9901128 T2	21-07-1999
			TR 9901603 T2	21-02-2000
			WO 9822430 A1	28-05-1998
			WO 9822433 A1	28-05-1998
US 5552426	A	03-09-1996	NONE	
WO 0202505	A	10-01-2002	AU 7168601 A	14-01-2002
			AU 7309401 A	14-01-2002
			AU 7311301 A	14-01-2002
			AU 7313201 A	14-01-2002
			AU 7313701 A	14-01-2002
			WO 0202505 A2	10-01-2002
			WO 0202518 A2	10-01-2002
			WO 0202506 A2	10-01-2002
			WO 0202520 A2	10-01-2002
			WO 0202512 A2	10-01-2002
			US 2002143177 A1	03-10-2002
			US 2002128255 A1	12-09-2002
			US 2002016320 A1	07-02-2002

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**